

Lost Tribes and Prophecies

What will happen to Australia, the British Isles, Canada, Europe, New Zealand and the United States of America?

Do you really know what will happen to Europe and the English-speaking peoples?

What about Africa, Asia, South America, and the Islands?



*“James ... to the twelve tribes which are scattered abroad”
(James 1:1).*

by Bob Thiel, Ph.D.

Lost Tribes and Prophecies

What will happen to Australia, the British Isles, Canada, Europe, New Zealand and the United States of America?

Do you really know what will happen to Europe and the English-speaking peoples?

What about Africa, Asia, South America, and the Islands?

How long until prophecies are fulfilled?

by Bob Thiel, Ph.D.

(also known as COGwriter)

Copyright © 2023/2024 Edition 1.1 by *NAZARENE BOOKS*

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the copyright holder. Front and back cover by Nazarene Books. Front Cover: Mosaic of the 12 Tribes and Genesis 49 from *Givat*

Mordechai Etz Yosef Synagogue in Jerusalem (Ori229). Back cover photos from Jim Haberman (via UNC-Chapel Hill) and Jastrow (via Wikipedia).

NAZARENE BOOKS is wholly owned by Doctors' Research, Inc. Edition 1.0

ISBN 978-1-64106-097-4

NAZARENE BOOKS

For those seeking knowledge

www.nazarenebooks.com

CONTENTS

<i>Acknowledgments & Introduction</i>	<i>p. 5</i>
<i>Why Bother With Ancient Predictions?</i>	<i>p. 8</i>
1. Tribes and Controversies	
Tribes of Israel – Protestant Controversies – Racist Accusations – Jewish Admissions – Roman Catholic Migration Issues – DNA – Word of God Foundation	p. 10
2. Promises and Identities	
Genesis 49 – 1 st Century Reports – Scythians – European Israelites	p. 38
3. Prophecies for 11 Tribes	
Reuben and France – Simeon – Levi – Judah and Israel – Black Israelites? – Dan and Ireland – 144,000 – Naphtali: Sweden – Gad: Switzerland – Asher: Belgium and Luxembourg – Issachar: Western Finland – Zebulun: Netherlands – Benjamin: Norway and Iceland	p. 51
4. Joseph's Descendants	
Isaac's Sons – Name of Israel – British: Covenant People – Not a Salvation Issue – Nation and Multitude of Nations – Throne of David – Stone of Destiny – Jeremiah and Tea Tephi – The Red Hand – Stone of Destiny – British Royal Family – List of Monarchs – Samaria – 9/11 – Immorality – Weather Prophecies – Debt Disaster	p. 84
5. Gentile Europeans	
List of Progenitors in Genesis – Unity? – Relations with the U.S.A. – Donald Trump – GPS and Galileo – Germanic Peoples – Slavic Peoples – Russia and the Medes – Baltics – Italy, Macedonia, and Greece – Spain and Portugal – Albania and Kosovo	p.154
6. Asia, Africa, South America, and the Islands	
Middle East and North Africa – Iran and Syria –	

Mahdi: King of the South – Jesus and the Koran – Peace Deal of Daniel 9 – Central and East Asia – Indians and Black Africans – Chinese Characters – Far East – Islands – South America	p.184
7. When Will the End of This Age Come? 6000 Year Plan – Last Days – Hindu Writings – Sequence of End Time Events	p.206
8. Nostradamus and Native American Prophecies Nostradamus Centuries – Native American/ Hopi Prophecies	p.224
9. The King of the North, and the End of the United States and its British Allies Great Monarch – European King of the North – Roman Empires – Daniel 11 – Ships from the West – Nuclear Destruction – U.S.A. Gone – English Destroyed – Lands Divided – Will Any Survive? – Chinese Prophecy, Australia, and New Zealand – A Cross? Beast Worshiped – World Economic Forum – King of the South Eliminated – Gold and the End of the U.S. Dollar	p.231
10. The End of the European Beast and Opposition Russia – Three Woes – Medes – 200,000,000 Man Army – End of Babylon – Armageddon – Plagues – The Fullness of the Gentiles	p. 320
11. Concluding Comments	p. 333
<i>Endnote Citations</i>	p. 339
<i>For Those Who Want More Information</i>	p. 362

Acknowledgements & Introduction

The author (Bob Thiel) first wishes to thank those who helped him to review this book, which include my wife Joyce and those at Nazarene books.

Scriptural quotes are mainly taken from the *New King James Version* (NKJV) throughout this entire text, unless otherwise noted. Copyright © 1979, 1980, 1982 by Thomas Nelson, Inc. Used by permission. All rights reserved. The *Douay Rheims Bible* (DRB) is sometimes also used, as it is an old Roman Catholic accepted standard of the Latin Vulgate into the English language. The primary electronic version used here is by permission of William von Peters. The Roman Catholic *New Jerusalem Bible* (NJB) is also sometimes used.

Front, back, and other photos are under public domain as they were so granted to the public by the originator.

Introduction and About the Author

The author has studied philosophy, religion, research, science, and prophecy, both formally and informally for several decades. He has multiple degrees, including a Master's degree from the University of Southern California and a Ph.D. from the Union Institute and University. In the past thirty years, the author has had scores of articles published on these topics in a variety of print publications such as magazines, newspapers, and journals. He is also a dedicated Christian and Pastor of the *Continuing Church of God* (official website is www.ccog.org).

Dr. Thiel has been a lifelong researcher and has received several research awards.

He has been married to his wife Joyce since 1981.

Together they have made multiple trips to ancient and religious sites in such places as Tikal and Iximche in Guatemala; Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamos, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, Laodicea, and Patmos in Asia Minor (Turkey); Vatican City, Rome, and Pompeii in the Italian peninsula; Athens, Corinth, Crete, and Rhodes in Greece; Fatima in Portugal; and Constantinople (now Istanbul) Turkey. They have also visited many nations in continental Europe, plus Australia, Canada, Ireland, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, as well as most of the states in the U.S.A. Dr. Thiel has also visited Jerusalem. The Thiels have also visited South America, Central America, Africa, Asia, the South Pacific, and the Caribbean. The Thiels do not have a worldly political agendum.

Dr. Thiel is ethnically primarily a Gentile, but strives to spiritually be an Israelite (Galatians 3:29).

Hundreds of thousands know Dr. Thiel as “COGwriter” and he normally writes three online commentaries daily at the popular www.cogwriter.com website. His writings strive to explain upcoming world events and the peace that is ultimately coming, despite the fact that extremely difficult times are soon ahead.

In addition, he produces a video and radio program titled **Bible News Prophecy**. The video program is on internet platforms such as YouTube, Vimeo, Brighteon, BitChute, Rumble, and Dailymotion, with AM radio on European Gospel Radio, plus on shortwave stations covering much of the world.

Although this book references a variety of terms, including *saint*, *blessed*, *venerable*, *father*, *mother*, *brother*, *sister*, *prophet*, *seer*, etc. to identify writers/sources of predictions, this does not mean that the author agrees that those persons truly held

those positions. Those terms mainly are quoted from other sources and/or are included, because they may help in identifying these sources historically.

Also, the term *Roman Catholic* is sometimes used as a distinction from the Eastern Orthodox, the Anglicans, and some others who sometimes use the term *Catholic* to refer to themselves. *Roman* is normally left out when ties to Rome/Vatican City are obvious by the context.

It should also be understood that the author often comes to different conclusions or interpretations than did some of the reporters/originators of the writings referenced in this book. Readers are encouraged to look up the sources and compare them to the end-time conclusions in this book. Please do not allow traditions or possible written errors to dissuade you from believing the biblical prophecies that will come to pass.

Many have been confused about the descendants of the sons of Jacob, many of whom are collectively called the “lost tribes of Israel.” According to biblical prophecies, their end time descendants are to have experienced various blessings, but then are also subject to various curses. This book is intended to clarify the end time identities for those who believe the word of God. And, yes, it does include historical and prophetic speculations from various ones. However, the actual criteria for truth in this book is the word of God.

The reader of this book should learn which nations and groups basically descended from which biblical figures as well as to see how many modern nations will be involved in prophecies that will be fulfilled in this 21st century. That being said, much of the focus of this book is on certain nations that look to have many descendants from the “lost tribes of Israel” as well as how those nations will be affected according to numerous prophecies.

Author's Preface:

Why Bother With Ancient Predictions?

Is the end truly near? Most of us living in these exciting and turbulent times go about our daily activities blissfully or purposely unconcerned about the future. We hear and see reports, through various media, of events converging in ever more intensity on a path toward what? Most don't benefit from an understanding that these events are leading to the fulfillment of many prophecies.

Yet, there are good reasons to "bother" with ancient writings and other sources of prognostication, since we will all be affected by the actions of billions of people who take predictions seriously. Historically, many powerful civilizations have ultimately been destroyed through economic, military, health, environmental, and moral decline. Will alliances like NATO remain helpful through these difficulties?

Scripture says not to despise prophecies (1 Thessalonians 5:20). Yet, many people have.

We have also seen numerous biblical predictions come to pass, with others to be fulfilled in the future. Is there a way to understand how today's leaders and the many global alliances are moving toward fulfilling God's Plan? I believe there is and that we have a personal mandate to become aware, involved and prepared!

While I believe that it is the Bible which is Divinely inspired (2 Timothy 3:16), relating to, and/or citing, cultural writings of others is a long-used technique in even biblical communications (e.g. Acts 17:23, 28; 1 Corinthians 9:20-22).

Did you know that people of various faiths, like Christian, Greco-Roman Catholic, Hopi, Hindu, Islam, and Buddhism are eagerly anticipating a new age of peace to dawn soon? Some expect this will only come about by the emergence of a single and/or inter-faith religion. Did you know that the Vatican, the World Economic Forum, and the United Nations are working hard toward this goal for the 2030s?

We are all affected by leaders who act according to their religious and/or secular beliefs, hence writings from many religious traditions and secular sources are included in this book.

How might your nation be involved?

Every individual had to descend from others. And according to the Bible, we all descended from Adam and Eve and later through the descendants of Noah. While this book contains ideas about the identities of numerous peoples, it is not intended to provide comprehensive proof of those identities from a secular perspective.

This book relies on the fact that Jesus said, "Scripture cannot be broken" (John 10:35) to back up its assertion that numerous biblical prophecies have been, and that others must be, fulfilled related to various peoples on the earth.

I wrote this book in the hope that you would like to discover what things have, and will soon, come to pass, and affect various lands on this planet. If you will properly heed them, I believe the decisions you make based on these predictions could actually save your life and the lives of those you love.

Bob Thiel, Ph.D.

1. Tribes and Controversies

Is everything random? Or is there a purpose being worked out on planet Earth?

If there is a plan, would you like to know how you could be affected?

As the Apostle Paul predicted, we are living in perilous times (2 Timothy 3:1-5). But does the Bible get more specific about the fate of different peoples in our age?

The answer is yes.

As it turns out, since everyone had to descend from someone, ultimately their ancestors are somewhere listed in the Bible. So, biblical writings and prophecies can often be tied to descendants of those progenitors the Bible discusses.

While this book will not go into all the details about how all the various peoples on earth will be affected, it does shed light on the prophecies related to the fate of the peoples in Australia, the British Isles, Canada, Continental Europe, New Zealand, the United States of America, and, to a degree those in islands, South & Central America, Asia, Africa, and other lands.

The Tribes of Israel

A major focus in this book relates to the destinies of the children of Israel.

Now, in this chapter we will also deal with some of the more common objections to prophetic identification matters.

The Bible teaches that Jacob, the son of Isaac and grandson of Abraham, had twelve sons (Genesis 35:22). After Jacob's

name was changed by God to Israel (Genesis 32:28), the families of his sons came to be known as the tribes of Israel (Genesis 49:28).

Jacob/Israel also adopted Ephraim and Manasseh, the two sons of his son Joseph, as his own children (Genesis 48:3-5), making thirteen tribes. The tribes then being, Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Zebulun, Issachar, Dan, Gad, Asher, Naphtali, Benjamin, Manasseh, and Ephraim.

All these tribes were part of the ancient kingdom of Israel as ruled by King Saul, then David, and then Solomon roughly 3000 years ago.

After the death of Israelite King Solomon, the kingdom was divided. In the 10th century BCE, the prophet Ahijah told a rebelling leader named Jeroboam that God was giving him ten tribes to rule (1 Kings 11:31). Those tribes became the Kingdom of Israel/Samaria, with the other remaining tribes becoming the kingdom of Judah. Although all those tribes are not yet together again, they are prophesied to be together in the future (Hosea 1:10-11).

What ended up happening to the tribes of Israel has been controversial. But descendants of them still exist to this day.

Those who are willing to believe the Bible, along with certain facts of history, should be able to see matters that have and that will come to pass. This book is not targeted to those who do not believe that they should totally believe the Bible.

Protestant Controversies

Some believe that one or more of the tribes of Israel ended up in the British Isles. It is not a new idea. The French Huguenot magistrate M. le Loyer's *The Ten Lost Tribes*, published in 1590, provided one of the earliest expressions

of the belief that the Anglo-Saxon, Celtic, Scandinavian, and associated peoples were the direct descendants of the Old Testament Israelites.¹ Yet, there are also historical references asserting the British-Israel connection in 6th ² and 10th ³ century as well as in later documents. There is even a related reference attributed to Cornelius Nepos of the 1st century BCE,⁴ as well as a reference of Israelites being in parts of America in the 17th century.⁵

The theory of connecting biblical prophecies to peoples of the British Isles has been called British-Israelism or Anglo-Israelism. British-Israelism attained additional prominence in the 19th century and into the 20th century.

Yet, many have dismissed such connections.

For example, the late Protestant Walter Martin, claimed that part of the book of Amos disproved Anglo-Israelism as he wrote:

The coup de grace to Anglo-Israelism's fragmented exegesis is given by the prophet Amos of Judah ... (Amos, dwelling in Bethel, prophesied against Israel's restoration as a separate kingdom [Amos 9:8-10]). We learn from this prophecy that as a kingdom, the ten-tribes were to suffer destruction, and their restoration would never be realized. How then is it possible for them to be 'lost' and reappear three millenniums later as the British Kingdom when that Kingdom was never to be restored?⁶

Dr. Walter Martin's conclusion is in biblical error.

We can prove that, even using a Protestant translation of the Bible. So, let's actually look at what Amos 9:8-10 teaches:

⁸ "Behold, the eyes of the Lord God are on the sinful kingdom, And I will destroy it from the face of the earth; Yet I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob,"

Says the Lord.

⁹ "For surely I will command, And will sift the house of Israel among all nations, As grain is sifted in a sieve; Yet not the smallest grain shall fall to the ground. ¹⁰ All the sinners of My people shall die by the sword, Who say, 'The calamity shall not overtake nor confront us.' (Amos 9:8-10)

Therefore, Amos 9:8-10 teaches that God would make it so the ancient kingdom of Israel would no longer be able to exist (it still does not), that those of the house of Jacob would still remain (their descendants still do), that the Israelite people would be sifted through many nations (which they have been), and that the sinners among them will be correctively punished (which will happen). Since that is true, actual Bible believers would tend to state that Amos 9:8-10 supports, and does not disprove, what has been called Anglo-Israelism or British-American Israelism. That does not mean all ten tribes became the British Empire like some have improperly claimed, but mainly one sifted tribe (Ephraim) became the British, and one other (Manasseh) became the U.S.A.

Furthermore, Hosea 1:6-7 prophesied that God would "utterly take away" the "house of Israel," while allowing Judah to remain. This happened beginning later in the 8th century B.C.E. when Israel was defeated by the Assyrians (2 Kings 17:3-12).

Perhaps it should also be noted that Jeremiah 51:5-6, especially when compared to Revelation 18:2-6 and Ezekiel

37:15-26, shows that into the present time that God still considers that Israel is separate from Judah. Therefore, despite comments from religious critics, the Bible does teach many aspects of “Anglo-Israelism.”

Some Protestant critics have stated that since Jews are also called Israelites in the New Testament, that the Israelites are all Jews. But the reality is that while all ethnic Jews sprang from Israel (and thus are Israelites in that sense) most Israelites (like most of the other tribes) are not Jews.

Racist Accusations?

Now, various secular and non-secular critics have improperly accused all who hold to any biblical understanding of British-American Israelism or European Israelism of racism.

A couple of decades ago, a Protestant website posted positive comments about a particular article I had at the cogwriter.com website. Then, someone who looked at that website of mine objected, claiming that because I believed in the promises given by Jacob to Ephraim and Manasseh (Genesis 48), I must be a racist, hence the webmaster should not mention anything from me—that critic wanted my writings to essentially be cancelled.

Well, that led me to contact the webmaster. And after providing information, the webmaster correctly posted that my view that we all had to have descended from people in the Bible (like the descendants of Noah’s sons and their wives), that salvation is not a matter of race (cf. Romans 10:8-13; Colossians 3:10-11), and that God promised various things to the descendants of Israel, was not a racist position—but a biblically-based one.

That said, the male ancestors of all those currently on planet earth are listed in the Bible in the 10th chapter of the Book of Genesis. In that portion of the Bible, we see:

¹ Now this is the genealogy of the sons of Noah: Shem, Ham, and Japheth. And sons were born to them after the flood. (Genesis 10:1)

Noah had three sons. All humans since Noah descended from his three sons and his sons' wives. The three major races descended from Shem, Ham, and Japheth who seemingly had wives of the Caucasoid, Negroid, and Mongoloid races respectively. That said, there are now also other terms for them: "races accepted by scientists ... three: European, Asian, African,"⁷ yet since those words are mainly used as geographic locations, the earlier used terms are also used in this book. While some prefer them term ethnicity to race, as there are more than three basic ethnicities, the term race is sometimes used in this book when referring to one of the three categories.

Before going further, it should be emphasized that this book does NOT teach any race or ethnicity is superior to any other in God's sight. That would be untrue and contrary to scripture. Plus, ALL people are part of the same human race! We all came from Adam, Eve, and Noah. Furthermore, promises to the descendants of Israel are not race related – they are descent-related.

Meaning?

For example, there are Israelite and non-Israelite Caucasians. There are Israelite and non-Israelite non-Caucasians. Although the majority of Israelite-descendants appear Caucasian, being or not being Caucasian (or living or not living in Europe) does not make one an Israelite nor a

Gentile—being a physical Israelite has to do with parental descent, not physical appearance.

Additionally, since there are non-Caucasian people who married into to the Israelite tribes, they and their descendants (irrespective of their outward appearance), are normally also recipients of the same blessings and cursings the Bible refers to.

Now allow me to emphasize here that I am predominantly Gentile myself as the bulk of my ancestry came from the non-Israelitish lands in Europe (though I also do have a smaller amount of ancestry from the tribes of Ephraim and Dan and elsewhere). It is not racist to teach about prophetic matters relating to the end time identities of the tribes of Israel.

Let it also be pointed out here that most congregants in the *Continuing Church of God* are of Gentile heritage.

Furthermore, notice the following scriptures:

²⁵ I do not want you to be ignorant of this mystery, brothers, so that you will not be conceited: A hardening in part has come to Israel, until the full number of the Gentiles has come in. ²⁶ And so all Israel will be saved, (Romans 11:25-26a, BSB)

In the *Continuing Church of God*, with literature in over 200 languages, we are working to support the full number of Gentiles who will be saved in this age as well as reaching those we can of Israelite background.

That is not racist.

Guilt By Association is a Satanic Tactic

Our church is not 'nationalist' nor 'globalist.' Like early

Christians, we could be described as ‘millennialists’ as our focus is on Jesus (Romans 13:14; Hebrews 5:9) and the coming Kingdom of God (Matthew 6:33; Revelation 20:4-6).

Like the original early Christians, we are also non-violent pacifists. Therefore, we are not spiritually or doctrinally related to those who promote racial or other violence.

Sadly, many these days fall for Satan’s accusatory trap of “guilt by association,” instead of looking at our actual teachings. This is a tactic that Jesus’ enemies also used against Him (Mark 2:16; Luke 15:1-2).

Since the Bible teaches that Satan is “the prince of the power of the air” (Ephesians 2:2) and “the accuser of the brethren” (Revelation 12:10), it is not a surprise that many are influenced to misjudge Christians who are faithful to God’s teachings today.

People should be neither marginalized nor “cancelled” who hold to biblical teachings—but that is happening more and more in the supposedly “liberal” Western nations and is being encouraged/promoted by “Big Tech.”

There are false versions of British Israelism (including the belief that the British Empire was the ‘stone kingdom’ of Daniel 2:35,45), and I am not an apologist for other groups who have their views.

Furthermore, please understand that many who have dismissed the idea of Anglo-Israelism in its entirety have either misunderstood proper teachings about it and/or do not accept that certain tribe-specific biblical prophecies needed to be fulfilled.

Supposedly Fulfilled?

Most published biblical commentators understand the passages from Jacob to his descendants in Genesis 48 & 49 to be prophetic, yet many seem to conclude that they have been fulfilled long ago.

Jacob specified that his statements to his sons were for the “**last days**” (Genesis 49:1). Despite that fact, notice what the late renowned Protestant theologian John F. Walvoord wrote to “justify” that they were fulfilled in Old Testament times:

Genesis 49:1-28 ... In connection with Zebulun, Jacob predicted, “Zebulun will live by the seashore ...” (v. 13). Though Zebulun would not border the sea, it would be near enough ...

Gad ... (v. 19) ... may refer to this (cf. 1 Chron. 5:18-19)

In general, the prophecies that Jacob bestowed on his children have been fulfilled in their subsequent history.⁸

Those writings are outrageous from one who claimed to believe the Bible!

Also in his book, Dr. Walvoord improperly claimed that the prophecies about Naphtali, Asher, and others had fulfillment in Old Testament times,⁹ which was not the case.

Last days prophecies were not fulfilled 2,500 to 3,000 years ago as Dr. Walvoord and various others have improperly taught.

Carefully notice that Dr. Walvoord falsely asserted that although Zebulun was not at the sea, this prophesy was to be “near enough” to it, apparently to be fulfilled by the 10th century BCE.

For those willing to believe the Bible that is easily disprovable.

First, let's quote the prophecy to Zebulun's descendants:

13 "Zebulun shall dwell by the haven of the sea; He shall become a haven for ships, And his border shall adjoin Sidon. (Genesis 49:13)

Let's look at a map of the ancient tribes:



Ancient Israel Shown with Tribal Borders (Wikipedia)

The fact is that Zebulun was almost as far from any sea as any tribe could be on that map. It is among the least likely tribes to be a “haven for ships” in its ancient holy land location.

Thus, the prophecy in Genesis 49 had to involve Zebulun relocating away from its Palestine/Israel area location 3,000 or so years ago. The same is true for most of the other tribes as well for the biblical prophecies about them to be fulfilled.

Furthermore, consider that Ephraim and Manasseh were prophesied by Jacob to become a great nation and a multitude of nations, respectively (Genesis 48:19). But that did not happen prior to Israel’s captivity c. 722/721 BCE. Nor, did they otherwise end up as a great nation and a multitude of nations until the 19th century.

The Bible shows it was during the time of the New Testament that the “**last days**” began (Acts 2:17, Hebrews 1:2), and no commentator has been able to properly demonstrate how else the prophecies of Genesis 49:1-27 were fulfilled in the “**last days**.”

Those of us who truly believe what the Bible says realize that the last days promises had to be fulfilled after Jesus came to earth and thus, some of us have looked into more recent history to point to their fulfillment.

Admissions from the Jewish Encyclopedia

Although it opposes Anglo-Israelism, notice that the old *Jewish Encyclopedia* admits the Hebrew scriptures support many parts of it (**bolding mine**):

The theory of Anglo-Israelism is based upon an extremely literal interpretation of the Old Testament ... and by an application of texts brought

together from the prophecies about Israel ... It is pointed out that while in the prophecies Israel will change his name (Hosea, i. 9), be numberless (*ibid.* ii. 1), dwell in islands (Isa. xxiv. 15) with colonies and be the chief of the nations (Micah, v. 8), Judah will be a byword (Jer. xv. 4). The "isles" (Isa. xli. 1, xlii. 4), to which Israel was banished, were to be north (Jer. iii. 12) and west (Isa. xxiv. 15) of Palestine, and to be in a cold climate, since it is said: "Heat nor sun will smite them" (Isa. xlix. 10). It was further prophesied that the isles would become too small for Israel (Isa. xlix. 19) and that Israel should be a nation and company of nations (Gen. xxxv. 11). It would, therefore, have colonies (Isa. xlix. 20, liv. 3), so that it might surround the nations (Deut. xxxii. 7-9) and be above them all (Deut. vii. 6, xiv. 2, xxviii. 1). ... The Anglo-Israelites triumphantly ask, "What nation save England corresponds to all these prophetic signs?"

In further confirmation it is pointed out that one of the tribes of Manasseh was to become an independent nation (Gen. xlviii. 19): the United States obviously represents Manasseh. Both Ephraim and Manasseh shall ... ("push the people together") in the countries into which they spread (Deut. xxxiii. 17). ...

The promise that Israel "shall possess the gates of his enemies" (Gen. xxii. 17, xxiv. 60) is taken to be fulfilled in the possession by England of Gibraltar, Malta, Heligoland, Aden, and Singapore. Finally, it was prophesied that Israel should bear another name (Isa. lxi. 15) and speak another tongue (Isa. xxviii. 11). All these characteristics of Israel, as distinguished from Judah, are fulfilled, it is contended, in England, its colonies, and the United States.¹⁰

Yes, those of us who believe that biblical prophecies will literally come to pass will accept proper understanding of “Anglo-Israelism.”

Roman Catholic Migration Issues

In the 8th century BCE (two centuries after the departure of the ten tribes under king Jeroboam in 1 Kings 11:31, 12:16), the kingdom of Israel was overtaken by the Assyrian Empire.

The Assyrians deported most of the people of the ten tribes northeast and replaced them with peoples from other lands (2 Kings 17:5-6).

Around 721 B.C., the people were placed in cities in the “land of the Medes” (2 Kings 17:6, 18:11; cf. 1 Chronicles 5:26). That land ended up being next to (and even part of) land that the nomadic Scythians later occupied.

How have Roman Catholics viewed this?

A tract from *Catholic Answers* with an imprimatur by Robert H. Brom, Bishop of San Diego, denies “British Israelism.”¹¹

Yet, consider that *The Catholic Encyclopedia* shows travel as it points to the ten tribes going to the land of the Medes and ending up in southern Russia,¹² as did the Roman Catholic saint Jerome.¹³

The Catholic Encyclopedia has further pointed out “The exiled of the Ten Tribes remained and multiplied, never returning to Palestine.”¹⁴

And it is true that the bulk of those removed from Palestine/Israel never returned.

While Roman Catholic theologians tend to believe that the 'lost tribes' are still lost, they do point to the Book of Revelation and other scriptures to teach that the tribes will be somehow reunited in the future.¹⁵

According to a Roman Catholic translation of the Bible, God stated:

“I will sift the house of Israel among all nations”
(Amos 9:9, DRB).

That points to the descendants of Israel moving through more than one land – which is what actually happened.

That said, various non-Roman Catholic researchers have claimed that after the 'lost tribes' of Israel journeyed from Israel to the land of the Medes, that was followed by being part of Scythia, and then into Europe.

Now, regarding the Scythians:

Central Asia enters history around the seventh century BC with the Scythians, a people described as having European morphological traits by both ancient Chinese and Herodotus.¹⁶

Æschylus says “The Scythians governed *by good laws*”. Herodotus says, “Swine they never use, nor suffer them to be raised in their country at all” (4:63).¹⁷

On the back cover of this book is a depiction of a Scythian on ancient pottery – you will note that he has European/Caucasian features. While not all Scythians were Israelites, many were.

Some of the Scythians moved north in various waves. Dibar Apartian reported:

Greek historians, who tell of these unexpected migrations, admit they know nothing of the origin of these immigrants. At most they tell us these peoples came from the areas around the Black Sea and the Caspian Sea.

Some historians recognize that these peoples, in their entirety, were composed of organized tribes, these saying that they were delivered from the yoke of the Assyrians! ... A number of works have been written on the migration of the Cimmerians in Western Europe. History finds them ... first in "Scythia," to the north of the Black Sea, ...

History tells us that a little earlier around the same time, a part of the Scythians marched against the regions of the north whose people actually were connected with Persia. That part called themselves "Saka" or "Sacae"; it was later known under the general name "Scythia." ... there exists a definite rapport between Sanskrit and Hebrew, thus between the languages of the Indo-European family (which includes Celtic) and the Semitic family ...¹⁸

That being said, there is academic controversy associated with migrations of peoples. There are many unknowns about the Scythians and migrations of the tribes of Israel.

But God knows – and HIS WORD CAN BE TRUSTED.

God Knows

Some have pointed to various scriptures about descendants of Israel being "scattered" (Psalm 44:11; Jeremiah 50:17;

Ezekiel 34:6), as proof the identities of the tribes could not be possible. Yet, God says He will gather them from the nations (Isaiah 43:5-6, 54:7, 56:8; Jeremiah 23:3, 31:10; Ezekiel 36:22-25; Hosea 1:11; cf. Psalm 106:47). While some gathering will happen during the millennium, it should be pointed out that many of the prophecies to the tribes had to be fulfilled before the millennium (e.g. Genesis 49:10,17,23-24,27) – so they are not all future.

Furthermore, in addition to Amos 9:8-10 where God says He will be able to sift the children of Israel to bring them where He wanted them to be, notice the following:

¹¹ 'For thus says the Lord GOD: "Indeed I Myself will search for My sheep and seek them out. ¹² As a shepherd seeks out his flock on the day he is among his scattered sheep, so will I seek out My sheep and deliver them from all the places where they were scattered on a cloudy and dark day. (Ezekiel 34:11-12)

So even though "they were scattered on a cloudy and dark day," this does not mean that they would not fulfill God's plan. God clearly says He can find them. And that is also plainly taught in the New Testament (cf. (Revelation 7:4-8).

All Tribes Returned?

As far as the tribes scattering to faraway lands goes, notice something from the apocryphal Hebrew writing of around 2,000 years ago called 2 Esdras:

⁴⁰ Those are the ten tribes, which were carried away prisoners out of their own land in the time of Osea the king, whom Salmanasar the king of Assyria led away captive, and he carried them over the waters, and so came they into another land.

⁴¹ But they took this counsel among themselves, that they would leave the multitude of the heathen, and go forth into a further country, where never mankind dwelt, (2 Esdras 13:40-41)

Reportedly, this journey eventually took many Israelites through a narrow gap in the Caucasus called the Dariel Pass or the Pass of Israel to the land of Arsareth in the steppes of what is now Crimea.

In the Middle Ages, a rabbi at Tschufut Kaleh (Chufut-Kale of Crimea) showed a missionary of Hebrew descent named Stern an ancient roll that had the following:

“I am Jehudi, the son of Moses, the Son of *Jehudi the Mighty*, a man of the Tribe of Naphtali, which was carried captive with the tribe of Simeon, and other tribes of Israel, by the Prince Shalmaneser, from Samaria, during the reign of Hoshea, King of Israel. They were carried captive to Halah, to Habor, which is *Cabul*, to Gozah, and to the Chersonesus, which is the *Crimea*. Cherson was built originally by the father of Cyrus, and afterwards destroyed, and again rebuilt, and called *Crim*.”¹⁹

In the 12th century, a rabbi Benjamin, son of Jonah, was determined to see the world from Tudela, Spain. He spent several years traveling. When visiting in Persia and in the Arabian Peninsula, he was convinced he ran into a small remnant of descendants of the “lost” Israelites as he wrote:

And there are men of Israel in the land of Persia who say that in the mountains of Naisabur dwell four of the tribes of Israel, namely, the tribe of Dan, the tribe of Zebulun, the tribe of Asher, and the tribe of Naphtali, who were included in the first captivity of Shalmaneser, King of Assyria, as it is written (2 Kings

xviii, ii): "And he put them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes."²⁰

Regarding some in Arabia, Benjamin of Tudela also wrote:

These tribesmen are of the tribes of Reuven and Gad, and the half-tribe of Menasseh.²¹

The tribes went to faraway lands as certain historical accounts support. And most of their descendants did leave Persia and Arabia.

Yet some have asserted that because there are biblical and non-biblical references to a few individuals of some of the 'lost tribes' being in the Judea area, that the majority of those who left returned to the Israel/Palestine area.

But that is not so. The fact that most did not return is also widely known by Jewish scholars.

For example, in 1918, Joseph Herman Hertz, who was the Chief Rabbi of the United Hebrew Congregations of the British Empire, reportedly stated:

The people known as Jews are the descendants of the Tribes of Judah and Benjamin, with a certain number of the Tribe of Levi. So far as is known, there is not any further admixture of other tribes. The Ten Tribes have been absorbed among the nations of the world.²²

Yes, as the Bible prophesied (e.g. Amos 9:9; Hosea 1:5-6) the remaining tribes ended up in many nations. The reality is that the bulk of those descended from the "lost tribes" tribes went away, but did not return, to Judea.

Scientific Controversies: DNA

Dr. James Tabor wrote:

Clearly the populations of Britain, the United States, and northwestern Europe are very mixed. What we maintain is that significant portions of the ancient Israelites ended up in these areas. Identifying them, at this time, is not *scientifically* possible.²³

If there are enough advances in science, it may one day be possible to have scientific certainty of the modern identifications. Yet, now, we have biblical certainty that there must be descendants of Jacob who received the promised blessings (Genesis 48). And that biblical certainty, along with various facts, helps us to be able to identify them.

One scientific controversy related to the “lost tribes” has to do with Deoxyribonucleic Acid (DNA) testing.

Some say lack of DNA evidence disproves Israelite connections to many lands, including in Europe.

However when, “dealing with European population palaeogenetics, no one can evade the question of the limitations that are intrinsic to the field of aDNA.”²⁴ “The peopling of Europe by modern humans is a widely debated topic in the field of modern and ancient genomics”.²⁵ So the scientific reality is that there are limits of usefulness of DNA. Dominant and recessive genes, mutations, interbreeding, other factors, and likely unknown factors impact the usefulness of DNA—scientists do realize there are DNA limitations related to descent.

The science associated with DNA is changing and, in time, there may be more specific markers or sub-markers that will prove to be totally useful in this endeavor.

That being said, most of the DNA in Europeans came from the Fertile Crescent,²⁶ which includes the Levant. Scientific research once confirmed that “a demic diffusion spanning the entire European continent from the Levant” with differences between “Eastern Europe” and “the West’.²⁷

A “demic diffusion” refers to populations spreading out. “The Levant” is a geographical term historically referring to a large area in the Eastern Mediterranean region of Western Asia. Western Asia is also known as the Near East.

Notice also:

DNAs ... to haploid group H, the most frequent in Europe and one that is common in the Near East ...

MtDNA lineages cluster into distinct groups ... cluster H ... This cluster ... is the most frequent in Europe and is also common in the Near East.²⁸

So, it is not surprising with “haploidtype” that “Middle Eastern populations generally connect much closer to typical northwestern European samples such as the Irish and Danes.”²⁹ (MtDNA stands for mitochondrial DNA.)

DNA experts realize that DNA is not sufficient to be considered the disqualifying determinant in ancestry. Note the following related to Jews:

In recent decades ever-increasing efforts and ingenuity were invested in identifying Biblical Israelite genotypic common denominators by analysing an assortment of phenotypes, like facial patterns, blood types, diseases, DNA-sequences, and more. It becomes overwhelmingly clear that although Jews maintained detectable vertical genetic continuity along generations of socio-religious-

cultural relationship, also intensive horizontal genetic relations were maintained both between Jewish communities and with the gentile surrounding. Thus, in spite of considerable consanguinity, **there is no Jewish genotype to identify.**³⁰

Furthermore, related to **“demographic history,” “large surveys of mtDNA variation in Europe have thus far failed to reveal any such patterns.”**³¹

A 2022 DNA study found that while there are genetic connections of modern Jews to those of the Middle Ages, there was considerable genetic diversity in some.³²

Scientific American reported:

Genetics is a probabilistic science, and there are no genes “for” anything in particular. .. When it comes to ancestry, DNA is very good at determining close family relations such as siblings or parents, and dozens of stories are emerging that reunite or identify lost close family members (or indeed criminals). For deeper family roots, these tests do not really tell you where your ancestors came from.³³

Hence, scientists tend to realize that DNA is not as reliable of an ethnic marker as many people believe. Even some who have reported DNA connections for the tribes of Israel, have found significant variations (e.g. reference ³⁴). **The reality of descent, and not DNA, is consistent with the assertions in this book on the identity of the tribes of Israel.**

Therefore, those who say current DNA knowledge disproves British Israelism or disproves that the bulk of the lost tribes made it into Europe are in scientific error.

Furthermore, however, there are *some* DNA clues. In 2010 it was reported:

... that when teams of geneticists led by Professor Bryan Sykes took DNA samples in the Celtic regions of Britain they discovered ancestries in the Caucasus, which lay within ancient Scythia, and Mediterranean Europe.³⁵

Thus, the travels of these descendants, including through Scythia, seems to have some modern support. Plus, there are a lot of mixes of peoples that have happened throughout history.

We also need to understand that the two houses of Israel themselves had differing DNA profiles. Genesis 38:1-2 shows that Judah had a child from a Canaanite, therefore the House of Judah had early Canaanite infusion. The House of Israel, in contrast to Judah, had more of an Aramaic infusion. In the Book of Genesis, we see that Isaac and Jacob took wives of their own ethnic heritage from the region of Padan Aram (cf. Genesis 25:20; 27:46-28:1-2). For this reason, although both Israel and Judah were Semitic (Shemitic/Semitic tends to refer to the white descendants of Shem), there would have been a different DNA element in each national heritage. "Therefore, Europeans descended from the House of Israel would be expected to have a DNA that differed from the House of Judah."³⁶

Furthermore, keep in mind that Joseph married a woman in Egypt (Genesis 41:45) and his descendants would tend to have different DNA markers than those of his brothers who tended to marry Hebrew or Aramaic women.

Science has shown that mitochondrial (mt) haploid DNA, the type which is considered best used for ancient DNA assessments, passes from the mother.³⁷ Yet, "mt DNA is

totally inappropriate as a means of proving a close relationship with anybody.”³⁸ So, caution is advised.

It should be noted that sometimes the Y-chromosome is used for DNA analysis, which comes from the male.³⁹

Notice also the following:

Atlantic Modal Haplotype #3 The most common variant of the Atlantic Modal Haplotype in the YHRD database has DYS389i,ii values of 13 and 29, and DYS385a,b values of 11 and 14. This haplotype differs by one step upward on the most quickly mutating marker. This haplotype is very interesting, from the perspective of the YHRD database, because most of the top frequencies are not in Europe but in the United States. Of the top twenty, twelve are among U.S. populations. Two are Hispanic samples, three are African-American (most likely of Anglo-American origin), and the rest are European American. These samples seem to congregate in areas of the U.S. settled by French, Scottish, English, Irish and German immigrants. That accords with the Western European origin of AMH. Southern Ireland and London, England appear among the top ten European frequencies, along with four separate locales in The Netherlands. Although “Border Reiver” descendants would most likely have acquired this haplotype through British “Celtic” ancestry, the multiple hits in The Netherlands suggest that an Anglo-Saxon origin is also quite possible.⁴⁰

The above tends to confirm observations made by some that many of those who migrated to the area of the USA were ethnically different from other Europeans that they lived near, but who stayed in Europe.

Raymond McNair pointed to cranial shape differences as well as geographic ones for those who migrated away from Germany as opposed to those who remained—essentially concluding that most earlier German immigrants were actually Manassites.⁴¹ Yair Davidiy has also written that the Germans who ended up in America came from areas of Germany dominated by Manasseh⁴²--he further reported that several DNA tests have tended to confirm the view that the scattered tribes in Europe and elsewhere descended from Israel was correct.⁴³

Though controversial, based upon the information above on Atlantic Modal Haplotype #3, travels, and other data, Raymond G. Helmer concluded related to Manasseh, the USA, and Y-chromosome DNA:

In short - haplotype R1b came to the United States from exactly the immigrants that we would expect to carry it.⁴⁴

Thus, there is some physical DNA evidence.

Let it also be pointed out that certain ancient Jewish sages and others have recognized that the British peoples descended from the tribe of Ephraim.⁴⁵ Some also felt that by the time the U.S.A. formed, a high amount of the people who went to the land that the U.S.A. dominates had descended from the ancient tribe of Manasseh.⁴⁶

At this time, DNA does not fully prove nor disprove all distant ethnic ancestors.

Archeogeneticists and Scripture

The Bible teaches:

⁴⁵ “The first man Adam became a living being.” (1 Corinthians 15:45)

²⁰ ... Eve, ... she was the mother of all living. (Genesis 3:20)

Despite some scientists accepting a mother ‘Eve’ and a possible father ‘Adam’ for humanity, archeogeneticists tend to assert that there could have been multiple ‘Eves,’ Adam and Eve could not have been a couple, and/or Adam and Eve could not have lived when the Bible says they did.⁴⁷ Therefore, several of their conclusions are biblically in error.

That said, archeogeneticists assert that humanoids were in parts of Europe and Asia over one hundred thousand years ago, then essentially died out and/or moved down south before later repopulating Europe.⁴⁸ Although the Bible generally differs on timing, the idea that there could have been human-like creatures that were no longer in existence prior to Adam and Eve may not be in contradiction with certain biblical passages.⁴⁹

Interestingly, archeogeneticists admit a “black hole” lack of human skeletons in Europe from around 5,500 to 4,800 years ago, and that this changed in a major way with the Bronze age, beginning about 5,000 to 4,200 years ago.⁵⁰ The Bible shows that humans were scattered around the earth after the biblical flood (Genesis 11:9), which was approximately 4,548 years ago. The Bible also tells of bronze being developed (though not necessarily widely used) around 5,000 years ago (cf. Genesis 4:22).

Irrespective of genetic similarities that archeogeneticists have found between pre-Adamic hominids and modern humans, any creature before Adam is not biblically the same as modern humans. Once God breathed into Adam (Genesis 2:7; Zechariah 12:1d), Adam became the first “man.” God

gave Adam the “spirit in man” (which gives human understanding per Job 32:8; 1 Corinthians 2:11) – that spirit in man would not be present the same way in pre-Adamic life. Of course, this is not something that archeogeneticists can discover in the fossil records. Scripture does not accept that any humanoids prior to Adam and Eve could have an unbroken reproductive line through to modern humans (cf. Genesis 3:20; Romans 3:4; 1 Corinthians 15:45).

Dating Issues

Despite the certainty that many claim about ancient, and, particularly, pre-historic events, the reality is that there are serious issues that often are encountered when attempting to date items from the past.

There are various assumptions in most ancient dating methods (like uniformity of change over time) that are not always accurate.

Furthermore, scientists realize that there are reasons to question various dates and dating methods which have been used.⁵¹

Mistakes do happen. For one example:

The shells of living mollusks were once dated as being 2,300 years old! ... tests showed they were absorbing ancient carbon from the local limestone.⁵²

So, yes, there are physical factors that can cause dating errors, as well as other ones (like historical inconsistencies).

The Foundation is the Word of God

An important reason to look into the tribes of Israel is that there were prophecies given to them by their father Jacob in

the 48th and 49th chapters of the Book of Genesis. The foundation of the prophesied fate of those tribes and various other peoples is in the word of God.

Those who truly believe the Bible accept the following:

⁹ Remember the former things of old, For I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like Me, ¹⁰ Declaring the end from the beginning, And from ancient times things that are not yet done, Saying, 'My counsel shall stand, And I will do all My pleasure,' ¹¹ Calling a bird of prey from the east, The man who executes My counsel, from a far country. Indeed I have spoken it; I will also bring it to pass. I have purposed it; I will also do it. (Isaiah 46:9-11)

⁴ ... **Let God be true but every man a liar.** (Romans 3:4)

¹⁷ ... Your word is truth. (John 17:17)

¹⁸ it is impossible for God to lie, (Hebrews 6:18)

God will make what He said come to pass. It does not matter what evidence humans may think they have to the contrary. The history of human 'science' is that many supposed facts over the years, including ones that supposedly contradict scripture, have been proven to be false. This was also known in ancient times as the Apostle Paul warned:

²⁰ ... keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding profane and vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called: ²¹ Which some professing have erred concerning the faith. (1 Timothy 6:20-21, KJV)

God's existence and His Word is backed by true science (for numerous scientific details, see also the booklet, free online at ccog.org, [*Is God's Existence Logical?*](#)). Do not let claims that real science contradicts the Bible veer you off from the faith.

Remember that prophetic promises that God inspired to be recorded in the word of God have come to pass and the others will come to pass.

2. Promises and Identities

In the 49th chapter of the Book of Genesis, Israel/Jacob called his sons together to deliver to them prophecies about what would happen to them *in the last days*:

¹ And Jacob called his sons and said, “Gather together, that I may tell you what shall befall you in the last days:

² “Gather together and hear, you sons of Jacob, And listen to Israel your father.

³ “Reuben, you are my firstborn, My might and the beginning of my strength, The excellency of dignity and the excellency of power. ⁴ Unstable as water, you shall not excel, Because you went up to your father’s bed; Then you defiled it--He went up to my couch.

⁵ “Simeon and Levi are brothers; Instruments of cruelty are in their dwelling place. ⁶ Let not my soul enter their council; Let not my honor be united to their assembly; For in their anger they slew a man, And in their self-will they hamstrung an ox. ⁷ Cursed be their anger, for it is fierce; And their wrath, for it is cruel! I will divide them in Jacob And scatter them in Israel.

⁸ “Judah, you are he whom your brothers shall praise; Your hand shall be on the neck of your enemies; Your father’s children shall bow down before you. ⁹ Judah is a lion’s whelp; From the prey, my son, you have gone up. He bows down, he lies down as a lion; And as a lion, who shall rouse him? ¹⁰ The scepter shall not depart from Judah, Nor a lawgiver from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes; And to Him shall be the obedience of the people. ¹¹ Binding his donkey to the

vine, And his donkey's colt to the choice vine, He washed his garments in wine, And his clothes in the blood of grapes. ¹² His eyes are darker than wine, And his teeth whiter than milk.

¹³ "Zebulun shall dwell by the haven of the sea; He shall become a haven for ships, And his border shall adjoin Sidon.

¹⁴ "Issachar is a strong donkey, Lying down between two burdens; ¹⁵ He saw that rest was good, And that the land was pleasant; He bowed his shoulder to bear a burden, And became a band of slaves.

¹⁶ "Dan shall judge his people As one of the tribes of Israel. ¹⁷ Dan shall be a serpent by the way, A viper by the path, That bites the horse's heels So that its rider shall fall backward. ¹⁸ I have waited for your salvation, O LORD!

¹⁹ "Gad, a troop shall tramp upon him, But he shall triumph at last.

²⁰ "Bread from Asher shall be rich, And he shall yield royal dainties.

²¹ "Naphtali is a deer let loose; He uses beautiful words.

²² "Joseph is a fruitful bough, A fruitful bough by a well; His branches run over the wall. ²³ The archers have bitterly grieved him, Shot at him and hated him. ²⁴ But his bow remained in strength, And the arms of his hands were made strong By the hands of the Mighty God of Jacob (From there is the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel), ²⁵ By the God of your father who will help you, And by the Almighty who will bless you

With blessings of heaven above, Blessings of the deep that lies beneath, Blessings of the breasts and of the womb. ²⁶ The blessings of your father Have excelled the blessings of my ancestors, Up to the utmost bound of the everlasting hills. They shall be on the head of Joseph, And on the crown of the head of him who was separate from his brothers.

²⁷ "Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; In the morning he shall devour the prey, And at night he shall divide the spoil."

²⁸ All these are the twelve tribes of Israel, and this is what their father spoke to them. And he blessed them; he blessed each one according to his own blessing (Genesis 49:1-28).

Since these prophecies were for "the last days," the descendants of those tribes must be on the earth today.

Moses also gave prophetic blessings to most of the tribes in Deuteronomy, which will be cited later.

For now, notice the following prophecy:

⁹ "For surely I will command, And will sift the house of Israel among all nations, As grain is sifted in a sieve; Yet not the smallest grain shall fall to the ground. (Amos 9:9)

The above shows that the descendants of Israel would go through various lands, yet God would still be able to sift and identify them.

First Century A.D. Writings

There are clues in the New Testament about the tribes.

Jesus said to His disciples:

²⁹ And I bestow upon you a kingdom, just as My Father bestowed one upon Me, ³⁰ that you may eat and drink at My table in My kingdom, and sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.” (Luke 22:29-30)

Obviously, God still knows who is part of each of the tribes, otherwise Jesus could not have said that.

Now, let’s see a writing by the Apostle Paul:

¹¹ Where there is neither Gentile nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian nor Scythian, bond nor free. But Christ is all, and in all. (Colossians 3:11, DRB)

The three comparisons above are making contrasts. First, with the Gentiles not being Jews (descendants of Judah), the circumcised vs. those not circumcised, and the Gentile barbarians not being Scythians. Many of the Scythians descended from Israel. The Scythians lived north of Judah, beyond the Euphrates river.

As far as the tribes go, notice that the Book of James starts off as follows:

¹ James, a bondservant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, To the twelve tribes which are scattered abroad (James 1:1).

So, the idea that the tribes were scattered was known in the first century. The fact that James addressed his letter to these tribes indicates that he knew where at least some were.

And where were they?

Not too long after James wrote, the Jewish historian Josephus wrote:

...[W]herefore there are but two tribes in Asia and Europe subject to the Romans, while the ten tribes are beyond Euphrates till now, and are an immense multitude, and not to be estimated by numbers (Flavius Josephus. *Antiquities of the Jews*, 11:5:2).

Thus, Josephus recognized that the bulk of the ten tribes were still not part of Judea. He wrote what he did when he was south and west of the Euphrates river. Josephus essentially seemed to believe that the bulk of the Israelis were all part of and/or mixed with groups like the Caucasian Scythians as they were among the peoples that were beyond the Euphrates.

The fact is that during the time of Jesus, Josephus DID NOT believe that the 'ten lost tribes' were part of Judea in the Roman Empire.

Later in the first century, we see the following in 2 Baruch (a Jewish writing not part of the Bible):

¹ These are the words of that epistle which Baruch the son of Neriah sent to the nine and a half tribes, which were across the river Euphrates, in which these things were written.

² Thus says Baruch the son of Neriah to the brethren carried into captivity: 'Mercy and peace.' I bear in mind, my brethren, the love of Him who created us, who loved us from of old, and never hated us, but above all educated us. ³ And truly I know that behold all we the twelve tribes are bound by one bond, inasmuch as we are born from one father. (2 Baruch 78:1-3)

Therefore, in the first century, it was known that there were descendants of the tribes of Israel that were not Jewish, though related through Israel, and they were in lands north of Palestine.

Yet, the fact that they could be expected to have descendants that are alive today is not considered to be of major consequence to many “historians” or “theologians.”

There is also an apocryphal writing, either a late forgery or perhaps from the 2nd century claiming to be the 29th chapter of the Book of Acts, which supports British-Israelism. This “chapter” is also known as “The Sonnini Document” or “The Sonnini Manuscript.” Part of it states:

... that certain of the children of Israel, about the time of the Assyrian captivity, had escaped by sea to the isles afar off, as spoken by the prophet, and called by the Romans, Britain.⁵³

Since this document was not publicly revealed until the 19th century, and there does not appear to be forensic (or substantial) support of its legitimacy⁵⁴, it cannot be relied upon. Yet, if it is legitimate, it provides additional support.

That being said, Jesus once told His disciples to go to the “lost sheep of the HOUSE OF ISRAEL” (Matthew 10:6). In the 4th century, historian Eusebius wrote:

But to preach to all the Name of Jesus, to teach about His marvelous deeds ... others should go to the Parthian race, and yet others to the Scythian, ... and some have crossed the Ocean and reached the Isles of Britain.⁵⁵

Connections to the Brits, Parthians, and Scythians are in historical documents.

Scythians

As related earlier, in his epistle to the Colossians, the Apostle Paul mentioned Scythians. While not all called Scythians were descendants of the tribes of Israel, it appears that significant numbers of them were.

As far as more of them later moving, the late Dr. Herman Hoeh wrote:

Greek writers, in the time of Christ, recognized that the regions of northern Asia Minor were non-Greek (except for a few Greek trading colonies in the port cities). New peoples, the Greeks tell us, were living in northern Asia Minor in New Testament times.

Here is the surprising account of Diodorus of Sicily {1st century BCE}:

... Many conquered peoples were removed to other homes, and two of these became very great colonies: the one was composed of Assyrians and was removed to the land between Paphlagonia and Pontus, and the other was drawn from Media and planted along the Tanais [the River Don in ancient Scythia — the modern Ukraine, north of the Black Sea, in southern Russia]".⁵⁶

Notice the areas from which these colonies came — Assyria and Media. The very areas to which the House of Israel was taken captive! ...

Parthia was defeated by Persia in A.D. 226 {now believed to have been 224}. Expelled from Parthia, the Ten Tribes and the Medes moved north of the Black Sea, into Scythia. (See R. G. Latham's The Native

Races of the Russian Empire, page 216.) From there, around A.D. 256, the Ten Tribes migrated with their brethren from Asia Minor into Northwest Europe.⁵⁷

Around the 2nd century CE, the Scythians tended to drop out of known history as far as much of the mainstream has been concerned.

In the 3rd century, the Roman Bishop Hippolytus taught that in the 1st century the Apostle Andrew preached to the Scythians,⁵⁸ many of whom likely would have been descended from the tribes of Israel.

There were different groups called Scythians and it appears that many ended up in Europe and some in the British Isles.

The late Raymond McNair asserted:

MOST OF THE SCYTHS WERE ISRAELITES

Who were these Scythians, or Scyths, as they were often called? And how did the name “Scythian” originate?

This was one of the names that the Ten-Tribed House of Israel bore in their captivity. The most likely derivation of this word is as follows:

This word “SCYTHIAN” appears to be derived from the Hebrew word “SUCCOTH.” We shall later see that the language of the Scythians (Scythiac) was very similar to the Hebrew. Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance defines this word as follows. “Cukkouth, sook-kahthr’; or Cukkoth, sook-kohth’;... booths; Succoth, the name of a place in Egypt and of three in Palestine” (Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance, Hebrew and Chaldee Dictionary, p.82).

The Hebrew language was written only in consonants. The vowels had to be supplied by the reader. If one takes out the vowels from the Hebrew word "Succoth" the basic part of the word is "Scth." In Strong's Exhaustive Concordance it is spelled phonetically both with a "c" and also with an "s." Remember the "c" and the "s" often have the same sound, as in our English words, "cell" and "sell." Both English words are pronounced exactly alike. ...

"Ye shall dwell in booths seven days; all that are Israelites born shall dwell in booths: That your generations may know that I made the children of Israel to dwell in booths, when I brought them out of the land of Egypt" (Lev. 23:42,43).

This was to be observed by Israel "forever" (v.41). The Hebrew word used in verses 42 and 43, translated as "booths" is from the Hebrew SCTH or SKTH. The Greek word for "Scythian" is "Scuthes," and is pronounced much like the Hebrew word for "booth."⁵⁹

The above is in line with the generally accepted view that Scythians mean nomads, which is consistent with staying in temporary dwellings, booths.

The late Dibar Apartian claimed:

Among all the peoples known under the general name "Scythians," the Sacae were the descendants of the children of Israel! Not only is it possible for us to notice a parallel by comparing the traditions of the two peoples, but history even recognizes that the majority of the peoples of the British Isles, particularly the "Scots" and the "Saxons," are the descendants of

the Scythians (New English Dictionary, Article: "Scots"), thus of the Israelites!⁶⁰

Some who either were Scythians, or traveled through the area known as Scythia, were part of the ten tribes of Israel.

Identities of Israelitish Peoples in Europe

While there are differences in understanding of identities, Jewish writer Yair Davidiy published:

In Sercia (east Scythia) the RHABBANAEI of Reuben bordered the Garianaei of Gad ... Ribuiari ... is another form for Reuben ... Ribuari may have been similar to the Franks own name for themselves.⁶¹

The French descend mainly from Reuben.⁶²

The "CHATAE SCYTHAE" ... The Chinese records say that that portion of the Naphtalities who had been north of them moved westward prior to 450 c.e. They also say that they had previously been north of the Altai mountains and were part of the Massagete, blue-eyed and fair-haired.⁶³

Finland has been identified ... as .. especially Issachar.⁶⁴

BENJAMIN also seems to have been represented by the NORMANS.⁶⁵

Britain was dominated by the Tribe of Joseph and especially the section of Ephraim ... From Britain came many of the settlers of South Africa, New Zealand, Australia, and Canada.⁶⁶

... characteristics of Menasseh are found in the U.S.A.⁶⁷

... The Irish of today... have characteristics applicable to DAN and Simeon ... The forefather of the Danes in Danish tradition was called DAN.⁶⁸

THE STATE OF ISRAEL AND THE JEWS ... Most Jews come from the tribe of Judah followed by the tribes of Benjamin and Simeon together with Levi ... Judah is the determining factor.⁶⁹

We in the *Continuing Church of God* believe that the descendants of Israel traveled to many places. While the following list may need some adjustment, it basically reflects where many of us have been taught those descendants went (even though some of each are scattered throughout many lands):

1. Reuben - France, mainly northern (dignified but troubled, Genesis 49:3-4).
2. Simeon - Scattered throughout the tribes (Genesis 49:5).
3. Levi - Scattered throughout the tribes (Genesis 49:5).
4. Judah - The nation now called Israel as well as the Jews not in that land but who were from the area near Jerusalem (Ezra 4:12; This tribe is not 'lost').
5. Dan - Ireland, mainly southern and some in far northern (on the outskirts--Genesis 49:17; the tribe that named places "Dan", Judges 18:12,29) (others in Northern Ireland mainly are descended from Ephraim). Some in Denmark may be from Dan, with others possibly from Naphtali.
6. Naphtali - Sweden (attractively described, Genesis 49:21).

7. Gad – Some in Switzerland (will apparently have to temporarily accept European domination, Genesis 49:19).
8. Asher - Belgium, some in Luxembourg (wealthy, Genesis 49:20).
9. Issachar – Finland, mainly western (sits between Europe and Russia, Genesis 49:14)
10. Zebulun - Netherlands (haven by the sea, Genesis 49:13) and a few in South Africa and the Caribbean.
11. Benjamin - Norway, Iceland (former Vikings, cf. Genesis 49:27), with some part of Judah in Israel.
12. Ephraim – United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and probably some in South Africa and Zimbabwe (multitude of nations, Genesis 48:19).
13. Manasseh - United States of America (blessed nation, Genesis 48:19).

These tribes look to be in the countries that contain the physical cities of Israel that Jesus apparently was referring to in Matthew 10:23. Countries like Sweden, Belgium Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway, Switzerland, Finland, France, Denmark, Ireland, Iceland, the United Kingdom, and the United States seem to fit some of the positive statements in Genesis 48 and/or 49.

Looking at the list, you will notice that although the Old and New Testaments use the expression the “twelve tribes of Israel” (e.g. Genesis 49:28; Matthew 19:28), that there were thirteen tribes (Numbers 1:5-15).

Furthermore, each of the thirteen are called tribes in Numbers 1:20-42 and look to be symbolized by thirteen bullocks in Numbers 29:13-14.

Yet, in the New Testament we only see twelve tribes listed in the Book of Revelation which will each have 12,000 people

sealed by God's angels (cf. Revelation 7:4-8). The list in the Book of Revelation does not include the tribe of Dan.

So, while Israel had 12 sons, after he adopted two of Joseph's sons as his own (Genesis 48), there were 13 tribes (sometimes called 12 $\frac{1}{2}$), yet in the New Testament, only twelve tribes are listed, and Dan is not.

The following two chapters go into more detail about each of the tribes.

3. Prophecies for 11 Tribes

God promised Jacob the following:

¹⁴ Also your descendants shall be as the dust of the earth; you shall spread abroad to the west and the east, to the north and the south; and in you and in your seed all the families of the earth shall be blessed. (Genesis 28:14)

Therefore, the tribes must have scattered and gone somewhere according to the Bible – and the New Testament confirms this (e.g. James 1:1).

How have various ones attempted to determine the locations and identities of the tribes of Israel?

The late evangelist Dibar Apartian, who stated he was an “original Catholic Church of God Christian,” wrote:

The patriarch Jacob, just before his death, called his sons together to reveal to them what would become of their descendants in the course of time.

This key prophecy is found in Genesis, chapter 49. It is renewed later, with some additions, by the mouth of Moses, Deuteronomy 33. Without this prophecy, it would be impossible for us to determine the exact identity of each tribe, after its dispersion.

More than this, the Bible reveals to us that each of the twelve tribes have inherited the principal traits of character of the son of Israel whose name it bears.⁷⁰

The Bible has prophecies for each of the tribes of Israel. While this book is not intended to go into all the possible

connections between them and modern nations, a few items will be mentioned to support the modern identification.

That being said, it is a fact that there has been intermarriage and migration which, in many cases, put the descendants of Israel as a minority in the nation they are identified with in this chapter.

The Bible shows that Moses gave prophetic blessings to the tribes:

¹ Now this is the blessing with which Moses the man of God blessed the children of Israel before his death. (Deuteronomy 33:1)

In this chapter, blessings and prophecies from scriptures will be quoted.

These prophecies help give clues as to the identities of the “ten lost tribes.” Although the speculated national identities are subject to controversy, and all the details pointing to those are not included in this book, the fates of many of the tribes in the 21st century are similar.

The twelve sons of Jacob form the basis for the twelve tribes of Israel. Listed in the order from oldest to youngest: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph, and Benjamin.

This chapter touches on all those descendants, though less related to Joseph (which is discussed in more detail in the next and subsequent chapters).

Reuben and France

Jacob’s wife Leah bore her first son and named him Reuben (Genesis 29:32), meaning “see a son.”

To Reuben, Jacob said:

³ “Reuben, you are my firstborn, My might and the beginning of my strength, The excellency of dignity and the excellency of power. ⁴ Unstable as water, you shall not excel, Because you went up to your father’s bed; Then you defiled it — He went up to my couch. (Genesis 49:3-4)

The “you shall not excel” comment would be consistent with France not truly leading the coming power in Europe. But it also has a reputation for excellence.

To Reuben, Moses said:

⁶ “Let Reuben live, and not die, *Nor* let his men be few.” (Deuteronomy 33:6)

Notice that the term *Nor* is in italics above, which means the translators are showing that they added it as it was not in the Hebrew text. The Roman Catholic DRB and Jewish JPS also confirm this passage as saying Reuben’s men would be few. So, Reuben was not prophesied to be the largest of the tribes.

The Jewish researcher Yair Davidiy wrote:

“REUBEN” in Hebrew connotes: “See-a son” i.e. REU (pronounced “roo”) - BEN. Reuben became prominent amongst the French who were dominated by the Ribuari and Rubi Franks and other groups named after clans of Reuben. ... A symbol of the Gauls was a cock and later France was represented by the sun. This is also a symbol of Reuben. The fleur-de-lis symbol of France is similar to the flower of the mandrake another symbol of Reuben.⁷¹

Rashi (Rabbi Solomon ben Isaac, 1040 1105, Champagne, France):

“The first exile of the children of Israel who were exiled from the Ten Tribes to the land of Canaanites unto Zarephath...The exegetes say that Zarephath means the Kingdom called ‘France’ in common language.” ⁷²

The Jewish sage Rashi commenting on Obadiah verse 20 stated that the ten tribes went as far as into Zarephath,⁷³ which various ones have said refers to France⁷⁴ and the 15th /16th century Jewish sage Isaac Arbarbanel also pointed to a connection to England.⁷⁵ In the 16th century, early Protestants pointed to another word in Obadiah 20 as to also pointing to the land of the Dutch.⁷⁶ Thus, the idea of the tribes going to the north-west of Europe and even into the British Isles was noted many centuries ago.

In the 20th century, the late evangelist Herman Hoeh wrote:

Reuben, unstable as water and having the excellency of greatness, we have recognized as France. Southern France, settled by the descendants of Javan (the Greeks), is gentile. The ... country, ... is unstable, yet sets the styles for the world, has the form of real excellency, and has the same sex weakness as Reuben, is France. When rightly translated, Moses says: “Let Reuben live, and not die in that his men become few” (Deut. 33:6). ... No other country in all the world fits all these qualifications. And is it not significant that the very country at war with England around 1800 should be France (Reuben), who would lose the birthright in the Napoleonic war?⁷⁷

The late evangelist Dibar Apartian wrote:

The history of the Gauls, in the eyes of the world, begins around the seventh century B.C. — but the fact is the Gauls existed long before this era! If their identity remains lost in history, it is because they carried before a different name: a Biblical Name.

As strange as it might seem, the history of the Gauls — this people who lived under the rulership of the Druids — begins at the same time as the history of Israel, and that, so the Bible tells us with great precision, begins with Abraham. ... The Gauls — the people of the Celtic race — are those who actually are the ancestors of the French nation⁷⁸

In the Bible we read:

¹ Now the children of Reuben and the children of Gad had a very great multitude of livestock; (Numbers 32:1)

Even to this day, descendants of Reuben have much cattle as France has about 18 million head of cattle according to *Statista* in 2022.

Although many in France have not descended from Reuben, and perhaps not even the majority, we see certain Reuben-like similarities to this day.

Simeon is Scattered

Jacob's wife Leah bore a second son and named him Simeon (Genesis 29:33), meaning "hearing attentively."

Jacob said:

⁵ "Simeon and Levi are brothers; Instruments of cruelty are in their dwelling place. ⁶ Let not my soul

enter their council; Let not my honor be united to their assembly; For in their anger they slew a man, And in their self-will they hamstrung an ox.⁷ Cursed be their anger, for it is fierce; And their wrath, for it is cruel! I will divide them in Jacob And scatter them in Israel. (Genesis 49:5-7)

Their deceptive cruelty is mentioned in Genesis 34:13-30 where they took deadly revenge. They both may have been the main brothers who wanted to kill Joseph (Genesis 37:17-20) as Joseph later imprisoned Simeon (Genesis 42:24).

Interestingly, Moses does not even mention Simeon in Deuteronomy 33 where he blesses 10 of the tribes.

Since Simeon was prophesied to be scattered, presumably his descendants are scattered among the different Israeli-dominated nations and likely Israel itself. Despite being scattered, God knows who his descendants are (cf. Amos 9:9; Ezekiel 34:11-12) and still includes Simeon as a tribe in Revelation 7:7.

Levi Also Scattered, But

Leah named her third son Levi (Genesis 29:34), meaning twine/to unite.

Jacob said that Levi would be scattered, but after the sons of Levi stood for God in Exodus 32:26-29, they were given the priesthood.

Here is Moses' blessing to Levi's descendants:

⁸ And of Levi he said:

“Let Your Thummim and Your Urim be with Your holy one, Whom You tested at Massah, And with

whom You contended at the waters of Meribah, ⁹ Who says of his father and mother, 'I have not seen them'; Nor did he acknowledge his brothers, Or know his own children; For they have observed Your word And kept Your covenant. ¹⁰ They shall teach Jacob Your judgments, And Israel Your law. They shall put incense before You, And a whole burnt sacrifice on Your altar. ¹¹ Bless his substance, Lord, And accept the work of his hands; Strike the loins of those who rise against him, And of those who hate him, that they rise not again." (Deuteronomy 33:8-11)

And although Levi was scattered in Israel, many came back to be with Judah (2 Chronicles 11:13-16). The Thummim and Urim were part of the breastplate of judgement for the high priest (Exodus 28:30).

The descendants of Levi are currently mainly in the land of Israel or with the Jewish diaspora. Some are also apparently scattered among the Israelitish nations.

Judah and Israel

Leah named her fourth son Judah (Genesis 29:35), meaning "praise."

Jacob said:

⁸ "Judah, you are he whom your brothers shall praise; Your hand shall be on the neck of your enemies; Your father's children shall bow down before you. ⁹ Judah is a lion's whelp; From the prey, my son, you have gone up. He bows down, he lies down as a lion; And as a lion, who shall rouse him? ¹⁰ The scepter shall not depart from Judah, Nor a lawgiver from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes; And to Him shall be the obedience of the people. (Genesis 49:8-10)

Despite hateful anti-semitism, which we condemn, the Jewish people are often praised for their education and scientific accomplishments.

Before going further, note that there is a prophecy that those that persecute/harass the Jews will be cut off:

¹³ ... they that harass Judah shall be cut off (Isaiah 11:13b, JPS)

Yes, there is coming a time of no anti-semitism.

The scepter prophecy has to do with the promise of royalty. The Bible shows that King David was from the tribe of Judah, as was Jesus (Luke 3:23-33).

This is also consistent with the following:

² ... Judah prevailed over his brothers, and from him came a ruler ... (1 Chronicles 5:2).

And the Ruler, Jesus, will be over all as “King of Kings and Lord of Lords’ (Revelation 19:16). Hence, Jesus will prevail over all the brothers of Judah and everyone else.

Now, recall that the word Judah essentially means to praise. King David wrote more than half of the 150 psalms. The psalms are often focused on praising God. King Solomon, also of the tribe of Judah, wrote 1005 psalms (1 Kings 4:32). Two of Solomon’s psalms are in the Bible (Psalms 72 & 127). Therefore, much praising of God in the Bible came from descendants of Judah, as well as from some important rulers.

Moses proclaimed this blessing:

⁷ And this he said of Judah:

“Hear, Lord, the voice of Judah, And bring him to his people; Let his hands be sufficient for him, And may You be a help against his enemies.” (Deuteronomy 33:7)

Throughout history, Judah appears alternatively as a lion or as a lamb. On the one hand they have been able to fight hard and on the other hand they are able to take a lot of suffering and persist.

Many simply believe that the nation of Jews called Israel is ALL OF ISRAEL, along with Jews scattered around the world. As shown by other scriptures (e.g. Genesis 48:11,15-16,19-20; cf. 1 Chronicles 5:1-2), the name Israel was to be placed on the descendants of Joseph.

Yet, it was prophesied that most would call the Jews ‘Israel’:

¹ Hear this, O house of Jacob, Who are called by the name of Israel, And have come forth from the wellsprings of Judah (Isaiah 48:1)

This has happened. In modern times Judah is referred to as Israel. Most people overlook the scriptures that teach that there are other tribes of Israel in other places (e.g. James 1:1).

Perhaps it should also be pointed out that the first place in the Bible where the word “Jews” occurs, the Jews are at war against ISRAEL (2 Kings 16:5-6). Hence all the tribes of Israel are not Jews. Let it also be noted that only one of the men or women of faith specifically listed in the 11th chapter of Hebrews was a Jew (David)—some proceeded the birth of Judah, whereas others came from the tribes of Levi (Moses), Manasseh (Gideon), Barak (Naphtali), Samson (Dan), and Ephraim (Samuel).

Although many are scattered, many Jews live in the nation called Israel. There are also many immigrants into that land whose ancestors intermarried and do not look the same as those who are most of the tribe of Judah descent by ancestry.

Black Israelites?

As far as ancestry goes, 'Black Israelite' groups (and some others) have falsely asserted that the ancient Jews were mainly black Africans. Some groups have falsely asserted that the majority in the nation of Israel are not Jews based on various misunderstandings of scripture and/or migration histories.

Specifically, many claim that the real Jews, those that they claim are from the Tribe of Judah are "American Negroes"⁷⁹—and that other Jews are not really Jews—while some others claim they are mainly blacks in various parts of Africa. That is not the case for many reasons.

Yet, this does not mean that there are no black Israelites or black Jews. Because of a mixed multitude joining the Israelites when they left Egypt (Exodus 12:38), plus the fact that some Jews did move into parts of Africa and interbred, there are some black Jews. There are also some black Israelites from the other tribes for the same reason.

However, the majority of modern Israelites and Jews do not appear to be of the Negroid/African race nor were the original Israelites or Jews.

While there are many ways to prove that, perhaps one of the easiest for the descendants of Judah would be to notice two 1st century coins issued c. 71 A.D.

After General Titus conquered Jerusalem in 70 A.D., Roman Emperor Vespasian issued coins—the back side of two different ones show conquered Jews:



Titus on left, captured Jewish man on bottom right (CNG coins)



Vespasian on left, captured Jewish soldiers on right (CNG coins)

The captured men have traditionally Caucasoid/European, not Negroid/African, hair. The Latin inscription on the second coin is *Iudea Capta* which is translated into English as “Judaea Taken.” These coins are clear evidence that the bulk of the Jews of the first century were not black Africans.

Color photos related to the Jews and Scythians (which would have included other Israelite tribes) are shown on the back cover of this book.

More historical photographs, along with scriptural support, about the early physical appearance of the children of Israel can be found online at: <https://www.ccog.org/were-the-ancient-tribes-of-israel-black-was-jesus-black/>

Additional Judah Prophecies

As far as prophecies go, the Bible shows that at least part of Jerusalem, the City of David (cf. 2 Kings 9:28), will have great damage (Isaiah 22:6-9).

The Bible teaches that there will be daily sacrifices resumed in Jerusalem (Daniel 9:27, 11:31, 12:11). Several groups in Israel, such as the Temple Institute and the Reconstituted Sanhedrin have been preparing for this. They have a high priest, a consecrated altar, and various instruments that they feel is needed for these sacrifices.⁸⁰ While a building may be constructed, representatives of both those groups have told me personally that they do not need a massive temple to resume them, consistent with scripture (Ezra 3:6).

Sometime after the sacrifices are resumed, the Beast leader, known as the King of the North, will one day go into Israel, stop sacrifices, and establish an abomination in that land per Daniel 11:31.

Furthermore, the Bible reveals that Ephraim, Manasseh, and Judah are also prophesied to turn on each other to some degree (Isaiah 9:21). It also shows that some from Ephraim (probably involving UK royalty) will attempt to make a deal with the Assyrians (King of the North power), but it will basically be of no avail (cf. Hosea 7:11-12, 9:3).

Dan, Ireland, the 144,000, and Idolatry

Rachel's handmaid Bilhah bore Jacob a son named Dan, meaning "judge" (Genesis 30:4-6).

Jacob prophesied:

¹⁶ “Dan shall judge his people As one of the tribes of Israel. ¹⁷ Dan shall be a serpent by the way, A viper by the path, That bites the horse’s heels So that its rider shall fall backward. ¹⁸ I have waited for your salvation, O LORD! (Genesis 49:16-18)

Moses prophesied:

²² And of Dan he said:

“Dan is a lion’s whelp; He shall leap from Bashan.”
(Deuteronomy 33:22)

In the Old Testament, the tribe of Dan was noted for renaming locations with the word Dan (e.g. Joshua 19:47; Judges 18:11-12). This is believed by some to have ultimately resulted in the name Denmark (with perhaps some staying there and many others simply passing through). Other Danites are believed to have come to Ireland – some of the Irish refer to “Donn” as their progenitor.

As far as Ireland goes, notice the following:

The legendary account of the origin of the Gaels and their coming to Ireland is as follows:

They came first out of that vast undefined tract, called Scythia-a region which probably included all of Southwest Europe and adjoining portions of Asia. ... They were called Gaedhal (Gael) because their remote ancestor, in the days of Moses, was Gaodhal Glas.⁸¹

The above (from no later than the 11th century) is consistent with the Irish coming from some Israelite tribe – the

connection to Moses for Goídel Glas comes from the legendary *Lebor Gabála* (Book of Invasions).⁸²

Some believe:

Another branch of the tribe of Dan which remained "in ships" (Judges, v. 17) made its appearance in Ireland under the title of "Tuatha-da-Danan." Tephi, a descendant of the royal house of David, arrived in Ireland, according to the native annals, in 580 B.C. From her was descended Feargus More, king of Argyll, an ancestor of Queen Victoria, who thus fulfilled the prophecy that "the line of David shall rule for ever and ever" (II Chron. xiii. 5, xxi. 7). The Irish branch of the Danites brought with them Jacob's stone, which has always been used as the coronation-stone of the kings of Scotland and England ... The land of Arzareth, to which the Israelites were transplanted (II Esd. xiii. 45), is identified with Ireland by dividing the former name into two parts, the former of which is *erez*, or "land"; the latter, *Ar*, or "Ire."⁸³

That being said, the late Dr. Herman Hoeh put out the following in 1957:

Dan was originally divided into two parts, one about Joppa, a seaport, and the other in the north of Palestine. Dan refused to fight along side the other tribes against the Gentiles (Judges 5:17). Dan would judge, or stand up to rule, his own people as one of the separate tribes of Israel indicating he would gain self-government in the following manner: "Dan shall be a serpent in the way, a horned snake in the part, that biteth the horse's heels, so that his rider falleth, backward." Ireland has done just that to England. In

fact, the symbol of the illegal Irish Republican Army was the coiled snake!

Dan would also be like a young lion leaping forth, an apt description of **Denmark**, which acquired the Virgin Islands, Greenland, Iceland and other islands in her heyday. Especially unique is the fact that of all the tribes Northern Dan still preserves their father's name the Danes!⁸⁴

Raymond McNair asserted:

All early histories of Ireland mention a people coming into Ireland called TUATHA DE DAN, which means "tribe of Dan."⁸⁵

Those of Tuatha de Danan reportedly "settled primarily in Southern Ireland."⁸⁶

There are also various claims that some descendants from one or more called Jair from the tribe of Manasseh (Deuteronomy 3:14; 1 Kings 4:13) ended up traveling with Danites to Ireland.⁸⁷ If that is so, it may be that many who migrated to the USA in the 19th century because of the Great Potato Famine in Ireland, including those from Ulster, could actually be Manassites. The relatively high percentage of USA residents that look to have descent from Ireland (9-15%) may add credence to those claims.

In the New Testament, God has an angel set a seal of protection on 12,000 people from each of twelve of the thirteen tribes of Israel:

⁴ And I heard the number of those who were sealed. One hundred and forty-four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel were sealed:

⁵ of the tribe of Judah twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Reuben twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Gad twelve thousand were sealed; ⁶ of the tribe of Asher twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Naphtali twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Manasseh twelve thousand were sealed; ⁷ of the tribe of Simeon twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Levi twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Issachar twelve thousand were sealed; ⁸ of the tribe of Zebulun twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Joseph twelve thousand were sealed; of the tribe of Benjamin twelve thousand were sealed. (Revelation 7:4-8).

Note: The term 'Joseph' is used for the tribe of Ephraim above (see also Ezekiel 37:16). Note also that the tribe of Dan is not in the above list.

Those 144,000 people descended from the tribes of Jacob get a special protection:

³ Then out of the smoke locusts came upon the earth. And to them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. ⁴ They were commanded not to harm the grass of the earth, or any green thing, or any tree, but only those men who do not have the seal of God on their foreheads. (Revelation 9:3-4)

These look to be those people who descend from the tribes that will respond to God's messages during the 3 ½ year period of the Great Tribulation and Day of the Lord. These New Testament passages show that God still knows the identities of the descendants of the tribes of Israel.

Those of Dan, as well as those not of the sealed 12,000 from each of the 12 tribes of Israel, are not promised that protection. Thus, they would be completely subject to

plagues of vegetation, fire, and the seas (Revelation 9:4) and deaths associated with the plagues (cf. Revelation 9:18).

Some have asserted that Dan's 'disqualification' from protection may be because of idolatry (cf. Deuteronomy 29:14-20) and/or other sinful reasons on the part of the Danites (e.g. Judges 18:14-30). End-time Danites may be more steeped in aspects of idolatry today than the other tribes which are perhaps more lackadaisical about it.

Another possibility Dan is not included is because he is called a serpent (as Satan is called in Revelation 12:9 and 20:2) and a viper that causes a rider to fall backward (Genesis 49:17). This could point to end-time Danites may be among the more adamant misidentifying Jesus at His return (cf. Revelation 11:15) and/or perhaps supporting the Satanic Beast power longer (Revelation 19:15-21) than the other tribes will. However, these ideas are speculative as scripture does not specifically state why.

GotQuestions.org, a Protestant site, has the following wrong answer:

Dan ... by Ezra's time, it had been totally wiped out. This would explain why Dan is not listed among the tribes ... in Revelation 7.⁸⁸

That idea is not possible because of the fact that the 48th chapter of the Book of Ezekiel prophesies about the borders of the tribe of Dan during the coming millennium, as well as those of the other 12 tribes – this shows that its existence was not totally wiped out.

That said, remember that ONLY 12,000 of each of the other twelve tribes are promised protection out of the millions of end time descendants – it just may be since major deception will come on the world in the end time per 2 Thessalonians

2:9-12, that Dan does not have anywhere close to 12,000 who will not be deceived.

Furthermore, it should be noted that it is not just the 144,000 who are subject to being saved around that time:

The 144,000, as well as the great innumerable multitude from all nations referred to in {Revelation 7:} verse 9, repent of their old sinful ways and turn to Almighty God in personal surrender.⁸⁹

The first two verses after mentioning the 144,000 show that a “great multitude” will attain salvation (Revelation 7:9-10) – that may well include some Danites.

Naphtali: Sweden

Now, let’s look at another tribe.

Jacob prophesied:

²¹ “Naphtali is a deer let loose; He uses beautiful words. (Genesis 49:21)

The late Dr. Herman Hoeh wrote:

Thomas {the Apostle} ... journeyed into Northwest India, east of Persia, where the “White Indians” dwelt. These “White Indians” -- that is, whites living in India -- were also known as “Nephthalite Huns,” in later Greek records. Any connection with the tribe of Naphtali? They were overthrown in the sixth century and migrated into Scandinavia. The archaeology of Scandinavia confirms this event.⁹⁰

Nephthali represents Sweden – “satisfied with favor, full with the blessings of the Lord.” She is compared

to a prancing hind or deer and “giveth goodly words” (Gen. 49:21). From Sweden, with a well-balanced economy, come the Nobel prizes in token to great world accomplishments. Sweden, during two world wars and ... trouble in Palestine, sent her emissaries to speak words of conciliation and peace. The promise by Moses to possess “the sea and the south” is applicable both to ancient Naphtali and modern Sweden: notice the position of the Sea of Galilee and Baltic relative to the position of this tribe.⁹¹

Moses wrote:

²³ About the tribe of [Naphtali] he said, “The people of Naphtali enjoy the LORD’s favor and are filled with the LORD’s blessings. They will take possession of the lake and the land south of it.” (Deuteronomy 33:23, GWT)

As far as lakes go, Sweden has the largest lake in Europe, the Vänern. And it does possess the land south of it until the sea. Note: many translations translate the Hebrew word transliterated as *‘yawm* as west, but it means a “large body of water,”⁹² and it is frequently translated as “sea” (which Smith’s Literal Translation does for this verse) and not “west” (like the KJV/NKJV do) in the Old Testament (e.g. see also Deuteronomy 30:13 where it is used twice).

The late Raymond McNair wrote (**bolding** mine):

Here is a very interesting quotation taken from an article entitled Synchronous History, Volume III (1874), written by J.W. Bosanquet:

“The old gravestones in the Crimea”, writes Neubauer, “which are now recognized as genuine by all men of learning, attest that there were Jewish

[Israelitish] communities in the Crimea as early as the year A.D. 6, and that ... held themselves to be descended from the TEN TRIBES."

I Jehuda Ben Mose ha-Nagolon of the East country ... of the tribe of Naphtali ... who went into the exile with the exiles, who were driven away with Hosea, the king of Israel, together with the tribes of Simeon and Dan, and some of the generations of the other tribes of Israel, which (all) were led into exile by the enemy Shalmanezzer... the cities of the exiled tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the half of Manasseh, which Pilneser drove into exile and settled there ...

The author of the above quote, like almost everyone, thought these exiles of the "Lost Ten Tribes" of Israel were "Jews." But the people of Ten-Tribed Israel were never called "Jews" in the Hebrew Scriptures!

Notice that the person whose name was found on this Crimean Epigraph was of the tribe of NAPHTALI, who was taken into captivity with the captives in the time of Hosea, king of Israel, with the tribes of SIMEON, DAN, REUBEN, GAD, and the half tribe of MANASSEH. This is another proof that the exiles of Israel (those of the so-called Lost Ten Tribes) passed through the area of the Crimea, in the vicinity of the Black Sea!

The exiles of the Lost Ten Tribes of Israel wandered for centuries in the steppes of Southern Russia under such names as Cimmerians and Scythians.⁹³

So, yes, there is supporting evidence of migration and Israelite connections.

Although some tie Naphtali with Norway,⁹⁴ scripture (e.g. Deuteronomy 33:23) points elsewhere. It also should be noted that although the Swedes and the Norwegians often appear the same (and there has been intermarriage), many of the two peoples are ethnically slightly different.⁹⁵

This is seemingly because they originally descended from two different tribes. This may explain why they have had two different migratory patterns.⁹⁶

It is also possible/likely that some in Denmark have descent from Naphtali.

Gad: Switzerland

According to scripture, Leah's handmaid Zilpah gave Jacob a son Leah named Gad (Genesis 30:9-11), which means fortunate or troop – both of which apply to Switzerland.

With a combination of cattle, cheese, clocks, watches, multi-function knives, mercenaries, banks, international organizations, tourism, and international investments, the fact is that Switzerland has been among the most affluent countries over the past two centuries.

In ancient times, Gad had a lot of cattle (cf. Numbers 32:1). In the 21st century, Switzerland being a country of mountains and valleys, is very suited for cattle. And for its size, has a lot.

Moses wrote:

²⁰ And of Gad he said:

“Blessed is he who enlarges Gad; He dwells as a lion,
And tears the arm and the crown of his head. ²¹ He
provided the first part for himself, Because a

lawgiver's portion was reserved there. He came with the heads of the people; He administered the justice of the Lord, And His judgments with Israel." (Deuteronomy 33:20-21)

Switzerland, Geneva particularly, has had a history of being an "international lawgiver." Note: Even though the migrations of some of the ancestors of Switzerland and Germany are similar, and some have erroneously taught that Germany is Gad, Germany has no history of being a recognized lawgiver—but instead primarily descended from Assyria.

The late Dr. Herman Hoeh put out the following on Gad:

Gad, which means "the troop" certainly designates **Switzerland** the only Israelite nation in which every man is mobilized for defense. Against Gad would come the foreign troops, said Jacob, but he will "trod upon their heel." Moses declared that Gad does NOT "leap," a characteristic of the colonizing or pillaging tribes. Gad "teareth the arm, yea, the crown of the head" of the Holy Roman Empire, in whose territory "he chose a first part for himself, and there a portion of a ruler was reserved." To Gad come "the heads of the people" as they do today to Geneva. No other nation on earth so perfectly fits this description of a nation of troops.⁹⁷

Jacob prophesied:

¹⁹ "Gad, a troop shall tramp upon him, But he shall triumph at last. (Genesis 49:19)

The above is an end time prophecy as it is for "the last days" (Genesis 49:1). It looks to be a reference to Switzerland—which will not be able to stay totally independent of the

Beast power that will arise in Europe. A troop shall tramp Switzerland.

Although many in Switzerland have not descended from Gad, the Swiss will apparently have to temporarily accept European Beast domination.

Consider, also, the following along with the reality that Switzerland is full of mountains:

¹² I looked when He opened the sixth seal, and behold, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became like blood. ¹³ And the stars of heaven fell to the earth, as a fig tree drops its late figs when it is shaken by a mighty wind. ¹⁴ Then the sky receded as a scroll when it is rolled up, and every mountain and island was moved out of its place. (Revelation 6:12-14)

¹⁷ Then the seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air, and a loud voice came out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, "It is done!" ¹⁸ And there were noises and thunderings and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such a mighty and great earthquake as had not occurred since men were on the earth. ¹⁹ Now the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell. And great Babylon was remembered before God, to give her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of His wrath. ²⁰ Then every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. (Revelation 16:17-20)

⁵ O house of Jacob, come and let us walk In the light of the Lord.

⁶ For You have forsaken Your people, the house of Jacob, Because they are filled with eastern ways; They

are soothsayers like the Philistines, And **they are pleased with the children of foreigners.** ⁷ **Their land is also full of silver and gold,** And there is no end to their treasures; Their land is also full of horses, And there is no end to their chariots. ⁸ Their land is also full of idols; They worship the work of their own hands, That which their own fingers have made. ⁹ People bow down, And each man humbles himself; Therefore do not forgive them.

¹⁰ **Enter into the rock, and hide in the dust, From the terror of the Lord And the glory of His majesty.** ¹¹ The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, The haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, And the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

¹² **For the day of the Lord of hosts** Shall come upon everything proud and lofty, Upon everything lifted up — And it shall be brought low — (Isaiah 2:5-12)

The above time frame is the Day of the Lord. It shows that various parts of Jacob/Israel are pleased with children of foreigners — suggesting intermarriage. They have silver and gold (cf. Revelation 18:11-12). They will end up hiding in the rocks (cf. Revelation 6:15-17)—while this hiding includes all associated with Babylon, it appears to be including various tribes of Israel, like Switzerland.

Mountainous Switzerland, as well as other mountainous regions, will be affected by what is coming.

Switzerland will not remain a safe place, like some modern writers and survivalists have claimed.

Asher: Belgium and Luxembourg

Zilpah's next son was named Asher, meaning happy (or blest), by Leah (Genesis 30:12-13).

Jacob said:

²⁰ "Bread from Asher shall be rich, And he shall yield royal dainties. (Genesis 49:20)

Dutchman Bert Otten wrote:

Literally it says that Asher's bread will be fat. It is noteworthy ... In Belgium they sell bread in big, round, 'fat', loaves.

However, lechem also means food in general, and not just bread. Asher's food would be rich in content, and it would be plenteous...⁹⁸

Belgium's main crops include barley, corn, potatoes, sugar beets, wheat, and assorted fruits and vegetables. Luxembourg's main crops are wheat, spelt, corn, triticale (a wheat/rye hybrid), rapeseed and assorted fruits and vegetables. Both countries are also involved in livestock and cheese production.

Moses wrote:

²⁴ And of Asher he said:

"Asher is most blessed of sons; Let him be favored by his brothers, And let him dip his foot in oil. ²⁵ Your sandals shall be iron and bronze; As your days, so shall your strength be. (Deuteronomy 33:24)

Belgium is one of the world's leading processors of cobalt, radium, copper, zinc, iron, and lead as well as an important producer of steel. Luxembourg is also a producer of steel, though many there are ethnically German.

Both Belgium and Luxembourg are among the wealthiest *per capita* nations in the world.

Issachar: Western Finland

Leah's fifth son was named Issachar, basically meaning habitation (Genesis 30:17-18).

Jacob prophesied:

¹⁴ "Issachar is a strong donkey, Lying down between two burdens; ¹⁵ He saw that rest was good, And that the land was pleasant; He bowed his shoulder to bear a burden, And became a band of slaves. (Genesis 49:14-15)

Here are a couple of claims related to the identification of Issachar, the second of which is from 1957:

Finland has been identified ... as ... especially Issachar.⁹⁹

Issachar ... Jacob continues: "For he saw a resting-place that it was good, and the land that it was pleasant; and he BOWED HIS SHOULDER TO BEAR, and became a SERVANT UNDER " ... (Gen. 49:14-15.) ... Such is **Finland**. Finland is the ONLY nation that has voluntarily taken the full responsibility of her debts. She is today paying off a huge indemnity to Russia. Her land is pleasant and good, not extraordinarily rich. According to Deuteronomy 33:19 she derives wealth from fishing and from hidden

treasures of the sand gigantic peat bogs and the finest sand for glass-making. Issachar is not a colonizing people they dwell pastorally “in tents,” said Moses.¹⁰⁰

Finland is located next to Russia.

Moses declared:

18 “Rejoice, ... Issachar in your tents! 19 They shall call the peoples to the mountain; There they shall offer sacrifices of righteousness; For they shall partake of the abundance of the seas And of treasures hidden in the sand.” (Deuteronomy 33:18-19)

As far as rejoicing goes, Finland has been named the happiest country in the world by the United Nations Sustainable Development Solutions Network.

Finland is reliant on seaborne trade. It is among the world leaders in ship technology and ship operations, particularly for arctic and harsh environments. As far as treasures in the sand go, Finland is involved in seabed mineral extraction in the sand as well as the deep sea.

Zebulun: The Netherlands

Leah named her sixth and last son Zebulun, meaning habitation (Genesis 30:19-20).

Jacob prophesied:

13 “Zebulun shall dwell by the haven of the sea; He shall become a haven for ships, And his border shall adjoin Sidon. (Genesis 49:13)

The Netherlands is next to the sea and has one of the largest ports in the world.

As far as Sidon/Zidon goes, according to *Gill's Exposition of the Entire Bible* this is not a reference to the city with that name. *Barnes' Notes on the Bible* says Sidon initially referred to a Phoenician territory Zebulun bordered. Now, the Netherlands is a nation adjoined to a Gentile one (Germany).

Moses wrote:

¹⁸ And of Zebulun he said:

“Rejoice, Zebulun, in your going out, ... ¹⁹ ... For they shall partake of the abundance of the seas And of treasures hidden in the sand.” (Deuteronomy 33:18-19)

Moses said: “rejoice, Zebulun, in your going out.” The Netherlands takes also treasures from the sea and the sand. Zebulun is a colonizing and trading people.

In Old English, the name Holland literally meant “woodland,” but some believe that the name came from the Bible:

According to Dutch Israelites, the Dutch were one of the lost tribes of Israel, namely the Zebulun. After all, one of the children of Zebulun was called Helon, who gave his name to Holland.¹⁰¹

If the term Holland came from Helon of the Bible that would seem to be a strong connection. Zebulun's son Helon is mentioned five times in the Book of Numbers (1:9; 2:7; 7:24,29; 10:16). In the 16th century, Protestants pointed to one term in Obadiah 20 as to pointing the land of the Dutch,¹⁰² whereas the Jewish sage Rashi said that verse referred to where the ten tribes went into.¹⁰³

According to Jewish rabbinical interpretation of scripture, the precious stone representing Zebulun on the breastplate

of the ancient high priest was diamond (cf. Exodus 28:18). For 400 years Amsterdam was the most important diamond city in the world, and while it is not anymore, it is still an important city in the diamond industry.

There are also concentrations of descendants of Zebulun in South Africa and in the Caribbean (Aruba, Curaçao, Bonaire, Saba, Sint Eustatius, and Sint Maarten), and even some in Indonesia.

Benjamin: Norway and Iceland

Benjamin was the second and last son of Rachel (Genesis 35:18). Rachel wanted to name him Ben-Oni, meaning son of my sorrow (she died right after giving birth to him), but his father chose Benjamin, meaning son of my right hand.

The Bible points to the ancient Benjamites as being highly effective warriors (Judges 20:24). But after the other tribes declared war on them for supporting terrible behavior (Judges 20:12-46), Benjamin became the smallest tribe numerically (cf. 1 Samuel 9:21).

Israel's first king, Saul, was a Benjamite (1 Samuel 9:21-22). When the 10 tribes left to form the Kingdom of Israel, Benjamin remained with what became known as the Kingdom of Judah (1 Kings 12:21). But in time, some left consistent with Jeremiah 6:1.

Jacob prophesied:

²⁷ "Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; In the morning he shall devour the prey, And at night he shall divide the spoil." (Genesis 49:27)

Moses wrote:

¹² Of Benjamin he said:

“The beloved of the Lord shall dwell in safety by Him,
Who shelters him all the day long; And he shall dwell
between His shoulders.” (Deuteronomy 33:12)

Dr. Hoeh wrote:

Benjamin constitutes Norway and Iceland. The Icelandic people in reality {are} a colony of Norwegians. Benjamin was given to David because Jerusalem, David’s capital, was in the tribe of Benjamin, not Judah. God said He would give David light in Jerusalem (I Kings 11:36). This verse could not refer to Judah which did not have to be given to the Jewish House of David. Benjamin was told to flee the destruction of Jerusalem (Jer. 6:1) which many of them did.

Benjamin is compared to “a wolf that raveneth; in the morning he devoureth the prey, and at even he divideth the spoil” (Gen. 49:27). This is certainly an apt description of the Vikings who pillaged Northern Europe, and even Mediterranean regions. Almost all Viking raids came from Norway. It is also significant that Benjamin, the smallest tribe, still is the smallest today. There are fewer Norwegians (plus 148 thousand from Iceland) than any other Israelite nation. (Moses’ blessing in Deut. 33 has particular reference to this fact that Jerusalem was in the tribe of Benjamin.)¹⁰⁴

Most Benjamites were part of Judah when ten tribes were given to Jeroboam (1 Kings 11:29-35). Some Benjamites are still part of Judah and in the land of Israel.

In the future, the prophet Obadiah proclaimed:

19 ... Benjamin shall possess Gilead. (Obadiah 19)

So, more of these people will end up back in the promised land.

Blessings and Curses

While God promised a variety of blessings to the tribes of Israel, those blessings were not stated to be permanent.

Notice, for example, the following warning from scripture:

¹⁰ When you have eaten and are full, then you shall bless the Lord your God for the good land which He has given you.

¹¹ "Beware that you do not forget the Lord your God by not keeping His commandments, His judgments, and His statutes which I command you today, ¹² lest — when you have eaten and are full, and have built beautiful houses and dwell in them; ¹³ and when your herds and your flocks multiply, and your silver and your gold are multiplied, and all that you have is multiplied; ¹⁴ when your heart is lifted up, and you forget the Lord your God ... ¹⁷ then you say in your heart, 'My power and the might of my hand have gained me this wealth.' ... ¹⁹ Then it shall be, if you by any means forget the Lord your God, and follow other gods, and serve them and worship them, I testify against you this day that you shall surely perish. (Deuteronomy 8:10-14, 17,19)

Now, the descendants of the children of Israel have, to a major degree, forgotten the true God and believe they have gotten all their wealth on their own. Many of the Israelite nations mentioned in this chapter will temporarily support

the Beast power. Unless they repent, they will perish in the latter days (cf. Deuteronomy 31:29b).

Furthermore, in the 28th chapter of the Book of Deuteronomy there are a number of blessings and curses listed. While the descendants of Israel have received many physical blessings, the Bible shows that curses will come to the disobedient (Deuteronomy 28:15-24), including having aliens rise up (Deuteronomy 28:43) – which has happened.

Additionally, the descendants of Israel will ultimately face tests and trials from the coming European Beast power which will turn on them (cf. Ezekiel 5:4; 39:23,28). Ezekiel 5:4 seems to show that after the Anglo-Americans are eliminated, fire will spread to “all the house of Israel.” Furthermore, Amos 6:3-7 points to many of them becoming captives in time as well.

What About Other Ethnicities?

One reasonable question some might ask is, “Okay if descendants of the children of Israel are in various nations, what about people in those nations that are not ethnically Israelites or otherwise not somehow descended from one of Israel’s sons?”

Well, from scripture we see that a “mixed multitude” came out of Egypt during the Exodus (Exodus 12:38). Those people, generally, experienced the same blessings and cursings that the ethnic Israelites did. Furthermore, the Bible teaches that all families and nations would be blessed through Abraham (Genesis 12:3, 18:18 22:18), with a similar promise given to Isaac (Genesis 26:4) as well as to Jacob (Genesis 28:14).

Thus, those in lands with a lot of Israelites would tend to get many of the same blessings (cf. Deuteronomy 26:11).

That being said, although the non-Israelites will also experience some of the same cursings (cf. Numbers 15:30), certain scriptures suggest that they may not be subject to all the cursings (e.g. Deuteronomy 28:43-44). And some of the non-Israelites living among the Israelites are expected to turn against the Israelites and join invading armies.

(More details as to why the listed nations have characteristics to tie them in with specific prophecies to the individual tribes can be found in numerous free articles at cogwriter.com.)

4. Joseph's Descendants

The previous chapter covered 11 of the 13 tribes. Here we will deal mainly with the two that came from Joseph.

First, let's see the following from the Bible:

¹⁵ Then God said to Abraham, "As for Sarai your wife, you shall not call her name Sarai, but Sarah shall be her name. ¹⁶ And I will bless her and also give you a son by her; then I will bless her, and she shall be a mother of nations; kings of peoples shall be from her." (Genesis 17:15-16)

Since Sarah Abraham's wife was promised to be the mother of "nations" this shows that there are nations descended from Sarah's only son Isaac—hence the descendants of Abraham, Isaac's sons, not Ishmael (whose mother was Sarah's handmaiden Hagar) is what God is referring to here. And since nations is plural here, it is not just a reference to the nation once and now known as Israel.

Isaac's Sons

Notice further:

²¹ Whatever Sarah has said to you, listen to her voice; for in Isaac your seed shall be called. (Genesis 21:12)

God said to Abraham that his seed would be called after Isaac.

If you believe the Bible, you must realize that somehow some had to be named after Isaac. Well, there is a group known as Isaac's sons, the Saxons as this 19th century report points to:

The Scythian tribes ... continued to flock into Europe ... The Saxons were ... a Scythian tribe; and of the various Scythian nations which have been recorded, the Sakai or Sacae, are the people from whom the descent of the Saxons can be inferred ... Sakal-Suna, or the sons of Sakal, abbreviated into Saksun is the same sound as Saxon, seems a reasonable etymology of the word Saxon.¹⁰⁵

While some have put-down the very idea that any of the words above were derived from Isaac's sons, not only does that seemingly go against scripture (Genesis 21:12), it also overlooks various historical assertions and reports.

Before going further, it may be of interest to note a connection between ancient Israel and the Scythians.

The Greco-Roman Catholic accepted Greek language book of 2 Maccabees was apparently written in the 2nd century BCE. It contains a reference to a large city near the Jordan river called Scythopolis (2 Maccabees 12:29). Additionally, there is a reference in the Greco-Roman Catholic accepted Book of Judith. Judith was probably written c. 100 BCE, but the focus is on the 7th to 4th centuries BCE (Judith 3:10) by the Greeks and Beth Shean in Hebrew. This was a city of Manasseh (1 Chronicles 7:29). Perhaps the Greeks called it Scythopolis as it was a place where 'Scythians' had come from and/or perhaps went through when they were taken captive in the 8th century BCE by the Assyrians.

The ancient historian Herodotus points to the defeat of the Assyrians the next century by the Median King Cyaxares and that the Scythians raised up a "great army" and even went to Palestine.¹⁰⁶ Some perhaps stayed and interbred with the Samaritans.

The Catholic Encyclopedia suggests that they were the ones who renamed Beth Shean as Scythopolis,¹⁰⁷ and perhaps that is how it happened. The *Jewish Encyclopedia of 1906* was unsure where the name came from.¹⁰⁸ But whatever the reason, the name Scythopolis was connected to what had been a major city in Manasseh of ancient Israel.

Here is something from the 6th century A.D. British monk Gildas, commenting on the Saxon invasions happening in his day wrote:

After this, sometimes our countrymen, sometimes our enemy, won the field, to the end that our Lord might in this land try after his accustomed manner these his Israelites, whether they loved him or not.¹⁰⁹

Notice that Gildas felt that the British Saxons were Israelites. I would also add that the 7th/8th century British monk known as the 'venerable Bede' recorded that the Picts came from Scythia, tried to settle in Ireland, but instead went to what we now call Scotland.¹¹⁰

In the 10th century a Scottish work, *The Pictish Chronicle*, taught:

The Picts and the Scots are given a common Scythian origin which splices them into the children of Israel stories with their hints of the Promised Land; ... Picts, Scots, and Britons shared a common ancestry; they were on one race.¹¹¹

The 11th/12th century Jewish sage Rashi indicated the "ten tribes" had gone into the area now known as France,¹¹² which many from Ephraim and Manasseh seemingly would have done before going to the British Isles.

The *Declaration of Arbroath* of April 6, 1320 states that the Scots came there from a journey originating “from Greater Scythia ... it came, twelve hundred years after the people of Israel crossed the Red Sea, to its home in the west where it still lives today.”¹¹³ Hence, this is an ancient claim to what could be called British-Israelism.

In the late 16th century an Irish work, *A View of the Present State of Ireland* (1596), points to Scythians settling in Ireland.¹¹⁴

In 1650 John Speed and in 1807 Raphael Holinshed published papers claiming that the British Isles were settled by Scythians in the “earliest times.”¹¹⁵

And while many moderns claim the early sources were only legends or myths, there are numerous ancient historical connections of some Scythians coming to the British Isles.

It should be noted, however, that 21st century scholars concur that those called Sacae were Scythian.¹¹⁶ But most do not make the British connection.

Name of Israel

The Bible shows that Isaac had two sons. And that Isaac ended up giving the following blessing to his son Jacob:

26 Then his father Isaac said to him, ... 28 ... may God give you Of the dew of heaven, Of the fatness of the earth, And plenty of grain and wine. 29 Let peoples serve you, And nations bow down to you. Be master over your brethren, And let your mother's sons bow down to you. Cursed be everyone who curses you, And blessed be those who bless you!" (Genesis 27:26,28-29)

Not long thereafter, Jacob fell in love with Rachel (Genesis 29:18). Their first son she named Joseph, meaning He (God) will add (Genesis 30:24).

When Jacob was older, God renamed him Israel (Genesis 32:28). When he was even older, he passed on his name and gave blessings to Joseph's two sons:

¹¹ And Israel said to Joseph, "I had not thought to see your face; but in fact, God has also shown me your offspring!" ...

¹⁵ And he blessed Joseph, and said:

"God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, The God who has fed me all my life long to this day, ¹⁶ The Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, Bless the lads; **Let my name be named upon them**, And the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; And let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.

¹⁷ Now when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand on the head of Ephraim, it displeased him; so he took hold of his father's hand to remove it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head. ¹⁸ And Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, for this one is the firstborn; put your right hand on his head."

¹⁹ But his father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know. He also shall become a people, and he also shall be great; but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his descendants shall become a multitude of nations."

²⁰ So he blessed them that day, saying, “By you Israel will bless, saying, ‘May God make you as Ephraim and as Manasseh!’ ”

²¹ Then Israel said to Joseph, “... ²² Moreover I have given to you one portion above your brothers, which I took from the hand of the Amorite with my sword and my bow.” (Genesis 48:11,15-22).

In Genesis 48, Jacob is clearly indicating that biblically one or both of the sons of Joseph could be referred to by the name Israel (though Ephraim looks to be referred to more as Israel than Manasseh through scripture) and seemingly also Jacob.

Ephraim is Firstborn

God had Jacob intentionally give the “right hand” blessing to Ephraim (Genesis 48:13-14) and God later declared:

9 For I am a Father to Israel, And **Ephraim is my firstborn.** (Jeremiah 31:9)

Hence, God clearly decided that one who was not actually born first in any family would be designated as the firstborn, indicating Ephraim was to receive firstborn blessings. Ephraim was born last, after the 12 sons of Jacob and after his brother Manasseh – this brings to mind the passage from Jesus about the last being first and the first last (e.g. Matthew 19:30).

Moses wrote of the following blessings to the descendants of Joseph:

¹³ And of Joseph he said:

“Blessed of the Lord is his land, With the precious things of heaven, with the dew, And the deep lying

beneath, ¹⁴ With the precious fruits of the sun, With the precious produce of the months, ¹⁵ With the best things of the ancient mountains, With the precious things of the everlasting hills, ¹⁶ With the precious things of the earth and its fullness, And the favor of Him who dwelt in the bush. Let the blessing come 'on the head of Joseph, And on the crown of the head of him who was separate from his brothers.' ¹⁷ His glory is like a firstborn bull, And his horns like the horns of the wild ox; Together with them He shall push the peoples To the ends of the earth; They are the ten thousands of Ephraim, And they are the thousands of Manasseh." (Deuteronomy 33:13-17)

So, Ephraim and Manasseh were promised many blessings. Those of us who believe the Bible understand that some peoples had to receive those blessings.

Consistent with Deuteronomy 33:17, Britain had colonies (Australia, New Zealand, Canada, the Falkland Islands) and other large outposts (Rhodesia, India, Hong Kong, and South Africa) to "the ends of the earth," while the USA has had military bases all over the world. And, together, the Anglo-American nations have militarily pushed people around the world.

Church of England minister Frederick Glover, who identifies England with the tribe of Ephraim, wrote:

Sons of Sakae ... Anglo-Saxons ... There are ... very striking ... marks by which the descent of England from Israel may be seen ... the Seven-Day weekly division of time ... and ... their use of the Three Yearly Feasts of the Hebrews, the Passover, ... the Feast of Weeks, ... and the Feast of Tabernacles, by the Anglo-Saxons ...¹¹⁷

So, there were anciently religious connections between Israel and the early Anglo-Saxons.

Birthright Did Not Remain with Reuben

Notice something else related to Israel's descendants:

¹ Now the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel--he was indeed the firstborn, but because he defiled his father's bed, his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph, the son of Israel, so that the genealogy is not listed according to the birthright; ² yet Judah prevailed over his brothers, and from him came a ruler, although the birthright was Joseph's (1 Chronicles 5:1-2).

As the firstborn, the birthright was originally Reuben's. Consider that when it comes to wealth and territory, Reuben-France sold off much territorial wealth in the form what has been called the Louisiana Purchase to the then rising U.S.A. in 1803. Plus, France also lost its prominence to the British (Ephraim) in the Napoleonic wars.

This time looks to have marked a transfer of physical birthright blessings to the descendants of Joseph.

The Bible records the promise from Israel that Ephraim would become a group of nations and that Manasseh would become an important nation on its own (Genesis 48:19).

The Jewish sage Isaac Arbarbanel wrote that Manasseh would expand, ¹¹⁸ and the U.S.A. certainly did after its separation from the British Isles.

In the 19th century at least one Jewish scholar, Meir Leibush ben Yehiel Michel Wisser (known as the Malbim), interpreted certain passages of scripture to mean that

Ephraim would rise up first and that Manasseh would rise up later.¹¹⁹

After the rise of the British Empire in the 19th century, more people started to wonder if the British were the people of the covenant promises to Ephraim (Genesis 48:14-20) and the descendants of Isaac (Genesis 17:19). A few Christians, Jews, and others began to write in the English language about this, as well as the rising up of the U.S. as a major power, in the 19th, 20th, and 21st centuries.¹²⁰

It should also be pointed out that a significant amount of Anglican ministers in the late 19th century believed in some form of British Israelism.

British: Covenant People

Interestingly, the Hebrew term often translated as “covenant” in Isaiah 46:11 and elsewhere in the Old Testament is *beriyth*¹²¹ and the word for “man” is *iysh*¹²² (found in Isaiah 46:8). Together those words are pronounced similar to the term “British.” Although some linguists have other views, it cannot be disproven as a possibility.

That said, covenant blessings were prophesied in the Bible (cf. Leviticus 26:9; Deuteronomy 8:18; Isaiah 42:6, 49:8).

Now notice something published the early 20th century:

Lieut. Totten of Yale says, “The word Britain is an astonishing confirmation here. It occurs in nearly the same form, and with reference to Israel (Saxon), twice in the Bible - Britham, a covenant. First in Isa. 42:6: ‘I the Lord have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee and give thee to Britham, for a light of the Gentiles.’ Second, in 49:8: ‘I will preserve thee and give thee to Britham, to

establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages. Both of these passages are parts of addresses made to certain peoples represented as dwelling in the Isles' (Isa. 42:10-12; 49:8), and as being the descendants of Israel. Who are they, but Britains, who in ancient Welsh (almost vernacular Hebrew) call themselves 'Bryth y Brithan' or Biths of Briton, i.e., The covenanters of the Land of the Covenant.' "¹²³

While some major academics endorsed aspects of British-Israelism until about a century ago, this view fell out of academic favor, but was never actually disproven.

In the Bible, the descendants of Joseph's sons were promised prosperity and blessings (Genesis 49:22-26), which the U.S.A. and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic descended allies have enjoyed.

Yet, Jesus warned that "to whom much is given" from such "much will be required" (Luke 12:48). And the Bible also warns of curses for those who forsake God's laws (Deuteronomy 28:15-57) and violate His covenant (Leviticus 26:15,25). **Both blessings and cursings are in the prophecies.**

Not a Salvation Issue

Some have wrongly asserted that race and ethnicity are massive salvation issues. We disagree. We in the *Continuing Church of God* believe that salvation is available now (Colossians 3:10-12) and in the future (Revelation 7:9-10) to people of all races and ethnic groups as God calls (John 6:44). We also teach against racial prejudice (see also the free book, online at ccog.org, *Statement of Beliefs of the Continuing Church of God*).

We in the *Continuing* Church of God are NOT part of the so-called “Christian Identity movement.” We do teach a truly biblical form of what is known as British-Israelism that understands that physical blessings (along with curses for disobedience; cf. Deuteronomy 28:15,22-24;31:29b) were promised to those that are now the primary Anglo-American nations in the world.

The Apostles were quite clear that salvation is available to Gentile peoples (Acts 11:1-18)--and since I am ethnically predominantly Gentile, I am one who benefits from the biblical teachings here.

Furthermore, those of the “Christian Identity movement” tend to advocate the destruction of other peoples and call for the conquering rise of the Anglo-Saxon peoples. We faithful in the *Continuing* Church of God do not—plus we are pacifists.

Although it has been claimed that “**BRITISH-ISRAELISM** ... has produced a highly favored perspective of English-speaking Christians in Bible prophecy”¹²⁴, we in the *Continuing* Church of God teach that because the British-Israelite peoples have been despising the God of the Bible (cf. Amos 2:4), they are prophesied lose their blessings and to be destroyed fairly soon unless there is massive national repentance (cf. Hosea 11:3a, 5b-7). We do not teach superiority of any race nor ethnic group.

A Nation and Multitude of Nations

Israel promised that Manasseh would become a great nation and Ephraim a multitude of nations.

Here is something from a Jewish source (Yair Davidiy), followed by that source citing a different source:

Joseph: Menasseh U.S.A. The United States of America¹²⁵

From the West of England and from Wales, Scotland, and Ireland the United States of America received approximately 87% of its British immigrants in its formative period. In other words, early American society was formed largely by groups from the Tribe of Manasseh.¹²⁶

We in the *Continuing* Church of God believe that the United States received the blessings to Manasseh and did become a great nation. The *Encyclopedia Britannica* once reported:

The United States is the world's greatest economic power, measured in terms of gross domestic product (GDP). ... The United States is relatively young by world standards, being less than 250 years old; it achieved its current size only in the mid-20th century. ... Probably no other country has a wider range of racial, ethnic, and cultural types than does the United States. ... Annually, the U.S. spends more on its military than the next seven highest-ranking countries in military spending combined.¹²⁷

As far as Ephraim goes, we believe that the promises went to the United Kingdom and its British descended allies. As far as being greater in some ways to the U.S.A., notice the following:

In 1913, 412 million people lived under the control of the British Empire, 23 percent of the world's population at that time. It remains the largest empire in human history and at the peak of its power in 1920, it covered an astonishing 13.71 million square miles - that's close to a quarter of the world's land area.¹²⁸

The British Commonwealth was truly a multitude of nations. The sun did not set on the old British empire. Even today, we see a company of nations from Ephraim including the United Kingdom, Australia, Canada, and New Zealand.

Perhaps it should be mentioned that Black Hebrews Israelite groups improperly claim that Puerto Rico is Ephraim and Cuba is Manasseh.¹²⁹ Scripturally, we know Ephraim was to become a “multitude of nations” (Genesis 48:19b), and that has not been the case for Puerto Rico. Nor is it generally considered to be “greater” (Genesis 48:19c) than Cuba, which it would have to be if Cuba was Manasseh as the Black Hebrew Israelites assert. The British Empire and the United States best fit those prophecies (and others) for Ephraim and Manasseh respectively.

The Throne of David Was to Continue

Let’s look at some prophecies related to the throne of David:

⁴⁵ ... King Solomon shall be blessed, and the throne of David shall be established before the Lord forever. (1 Kings 2:45)

³ “I have made a covenant with My chosen, I have sworn to My servant David: ⁴ ‘Your seed I will establish forever, And build up your throne to all generations.’” (Psalm 89:3-4)

² ... Hear the word of the Lord, O king of Judah, you who sit on the throne of David, you and your servants and your people who enter these gates! (Jeremiah 22:2)

¹⁷ “For thus says the Lord: ‘David shall never lack a man to sit on the throne of the house of Israel; ¹⁸ nor shall the priests, the Levites, lack a man to offer burnt

offerings before Me, to kindle grain offerings, and to sacrifice continually.'" (Jeremiah 33:17-18)

The above passages make clear that the throne of David was to last. Since scripture cannot be broken (John 10:35), then someone has to be on that throne now. Let me also state that there have been Levites ever since Jeremiah 33:17-18--the fact that they do not do their original biblical role for offerings does NOT change the fact that they still exist, which is all that scripture requires for them. It should also be noted that Young's Literal Translation says "one" instead of "a man," which literally allows for a woman to have the throne (the NET uses "successor" and the NLT uses "descendant").

Furthermore, since God had Jeremiah write this during the life of the last king on the throne of David in Jerusalem (Zedekiah) this may also be suggesting that Jeremiah would be involved in the continuity of the Davidic throne.

Although some have improperly asserted that Jeremiah 33:17 does not mean that anyone actually has to be on the throne, only available to be on it, remember also the following:

¹⁰ The scepter shall not depart from Judah, Nor a lawgiver from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes; And to Him shall be the obedience of the people. (Genesis 49:10)

The Bible shows that scepter came to David of Judah when he became king (cf. Numbers 24:17; 2 Samuel 8:2). Some who do not accept that the British Royal family can be holding that scepter have said that, "Until Shiloh comes" means Jesus' first coming. However, that is in error for three reasons.

The first is if that were the case, then where were the kings between Zedekiah (the last King of Judah) and Jesus? There were none.

And secondly, during His first coming, Jesus said His Kingdom was future (John 18:36), so He did not assume the throne then. Critics of what is known as British-Israelism do not seem to realize that and they wrongly rationalize away many scriptures. Jesus will sit on the throne of David in the millennial Kingdom of God.

And thirdly, note that Genesis 49:10 has to be a reference to the second coming of Jesus, as we did not see the obedience of the people given to Him during the first coming. Hence, biblically, there had to have been a royal succession from Judah's line after Zedekiah until Jesus' return.

Consider that through the prophet Nathan, God made a remarkable promise to King David:

¹² "When your days are fulfilled and you rest with your fathers, I will set up your seed after you, who will come from your body, and I will establish his kingdom. ¹³ He shall build a house for My name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. ...

¹⁵ But My mercy shall not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I removed from before you. ¹⁶ And your house and your kingdom shall be established forever before you. Your throne shall be established forever. (2 Samuel 7:12-13, 15-16)

The throne was to be established forever—and it has been! And this is the throne Jesus will return to.

Scripture is plainly teaching that someone has had to have been on that throne since the time of Zedekiah (a contemporary of Jeremiah), who was the last king of Judah

in the Holy Land until Jesus returns to set up the millennial kingdom.

Since someone had to fill the regal role, we can see through historical records and legends that the royalty in the British Isles fits this.

Now, some have pointed to Jeremiah 22:28-30 as proof that, because God said that Coniah (also called Jeconiah) would not have a son to be on the throne of David as proof that the line would not continue, that overlooks the fact that the line continued through Coniah's brother Zedekiah (1 Chronicles 3:16).

The idea that "Christ upon His return, will take over David's throne" was believed by those who held to many Church of God doctrines in Transylvania during the late Middle Ages.¹³⁰; see also *Die Sabbatharier in Siebenburgen*.¹³¹

The idea that Jesus would return to the throne of David is NOT a 19th, 20th, or 21st century invention.

This 'throne of David' doctrine is also taught in the New Testament:

³¹ ... Jesus . ³² He will be great, and will be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David. (Luke 1:31-32)

²⁸ So Jesus said to them, "Assuredly I say to you, that in the regeneration, when the Son of Man sits on the throne of His glory, you who have followed Me will also sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel." (Matthew 19:28)

Notice that these are still future prophecies. Jesus has been appointed "heir of all things" (Hebrews 1:2). Jesus is not now

on the throne of David and He will not be until the coming millennial Kingdom of God (cf. Acts 2:29-30; Revelation 11:15, 20:4).

Therefore, until Jesus returns, someone needs to be on the throne – and the British Royal Family has an occupant to this day.

The New Testament also teaches:

⁵ ... Behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has prevailed ... (Revelation 5:5)

Note that even in the last book of the Bible, Jesus is again tied in with David and is prophesied to prevail. Jesus will gain the throne of David (Luke 1:32).

Jeremiah and the King's Daughters

In the Bible, the expression “king's daughters” is used twice, both in the Book written by Jeremiah (Jeremiah 41:10, 43:6), with Jeremiah travelling with them to Egypt the second time. Could Jeremiah have travelled elsewhere with them?

If Jeremiah took one or more of the “king's daughters” with him to Ireland, this would have been a way to fulfill the following prophecies:

¹⁰ The scepter shall not depart from Judah (Genesis 49:10).

⁵ I promised David your father, saying, ‘You shall not fail to have a man on the throne of Israel.’ (1 Kings 9:5)

The Davidic kingdom ended in Judah nearly six centuries BEFORE Christ came (around 586 B.C.), thus there had to be a way for the descendants of David to rule. And probably prior to the time the last true king of Judah died, his daughters (at least one of whom seems to have been in the British Isles) married and later had descendants to reign. Those who actually believe what the Bible teaches realize that somehow God must have fulfilled His promises. And the British Isles seems to make the most historical sense to fulfill this.

As far as Jeremiah, himself, goes, when my wife and I were in Ireland in 2022, we went to several places that some claim that Jeremiah visited and/or was buried. While many scholars believe there was no ancient proof he was in Ireland, there are ancient records pointing to a prophet from the Hebrews coming to Ireland.¹³²

Some claim Jeremiah is referred to in the ancient literature as Iarbanel, Caei,¹³³ and/or Ollam Fodhla.¹³⁴

Though some have eliminated Ollam Fodhla as being Jeremiah because of date issues, there seems to have been more than one Ollam Fodhla in ancient Irish history. A 6th century BCE date is given for one Ollamh Fodhla¹³⁵ which would seem to be the person some claim was Jeremiah.¹³⁶

Jeremiah and Tea Tephi

Is it possible that there is a connection between the British Royal Family, a daughter of a Judean king, and the prophet Jeremiah?

Yes.

Here is an explanation of what some believe happened that was published in 1879:

The Phœnicians, or Philistines, ... took early possession of Ireland. On this point the old as well as the new historians generally agree. But there was another early settlement in the North of Ireland, whom the historians called *Tuath de Danan*, which simply means the folks of the Tribe of Dan. They introduced into the Irish language hundreds of Hebrew words, with many customs and legends of the Hebrews. ... God promised to Israel, as a people and a kingdom, such pre-eminence in origin, power and growth. The answer then is simple and plain--England, as representing the Lost Tribes of Israel, and Queen Victoria, being a direct descendant from David. For she came of James VI., of Scotland - he from Bruce and Duncan, and Malcolm, and Kenneth, and Kenneth through the kings of Argyleshire, Alpin, and Donald, and Fergus. Then through the long line of Irish Kings from Earca to Heremon, of Tara, and he married Tea Tephî, the daughter of Zedekiah, who, through Jeremiah, the prophet, had been hid from the destroying vengeance of Nebuchadnezzar. He killed all her brothers and kindred, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah and took him a captive to Babylon, where he died ...

God had promised to Jeremiah his life wherever he went ... Jer. xlv. 5. The North of Ireland had been settled with the tribe of Dan; they at once understood who their visitor was. They called him Olam Fodla, meaning a divine man or teacher. The princess was called Tea Tephî, the beautiful one from the East. This princess was married to Heremon, of Ulster, the king of Lothair Croffin, for such was the name of the city of Tara. This word Tara is Arat spelled backward. The Hebrew read from right to left; English, left to right. Lothair Croffin was changed into Tara at the time of

the wedding. Tara means law. Thus began the seed of David to take root, and from there it spread over all Ireland, then to Scotland, thence to England, and Jacob's Stone in Westminster Abbey, marks the journey of David's throne, and has always kept with the seed, and they have been always crowned on it.

...

Ireland ... Ollam - Folla, which means a divine teacher; the name or title is in Hebrew. This man, ... founded a college to train students to teach and preach his religion. It was called *Mur - Ollam*, school of the divine. Here again the name is Hebrew, although in Irish.

This wonderful man had with him a fair young princess, whose name in Hebrew - Irish was *Tea Tephi*, which means the beautiful one from the East. This lovely princess was married to the governor of Ulster, Heremon. He resided in the city of Lothair Croffin. In the agreement of the marriage, among many things, he was to accept her religion, give her joint authority, and build the *Mur- Ollam*, or college, and sustain it. Also to change the name of his city from *Lothair Croffin* to *Tara*, which means law; to adopt her standard or banner emblem, the harp and lion, and to be crowned on the wonderful stone called in Irish -Hebrew *Lia - Fail*, which means stone of destiny, sometimes called *Eben Gedoulah*, the precious stone. From this Tea Tephi we get our female goddess of liberty, who on old coins is seated upon a lion with the Davidian harp in her hand.

Our text {the Bible} tells us that Jeremiah was to plant and build up. Here he planted, and here he did build. He planted and built a throne, a college and a religion.

Turn to Ezekiel, 17th chapter, and read the famous riddle. Tea Tephî is the tender twig that was cropped off from the high cedar, King Zedekiah, and planted among the merchants by great waters on the mountain of Israel. She was the tender one that was to take root downward.

To Jeremiah the Lord said, "Verily it shall be well with thy remnant."

Nay, more, He told him that He would give him his life for a prey whithersoever he went. And in 2d Kings xix, 30, we read: "And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall yet again take root downward and bear fruit upward. For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of Mount Zion; the zeal of the Lord of hosts shall do this."

And Ezekiel, in his captivity, sent forth a prophecy referring to the wicked prince, Zedekiah, saying of his throne in the name of Jehovah: "I will overturn, overturn, overturn it, and it shall be no more until he comes whose right it is, and I will give it him." So was this throne overturned, and was never after established in Jerusalem. You will notice that there are three overturnings, and as scriptural language is emphatic and not superfluous or tautological, these overturnings mean something.

Turn to history, and you will find this throne has been turned over just three times — first, from Jerusalem to Ireland; second, through King Fergus to Scotland, and third, through King James, from Scotland to England.¹³⁷

The above is one idea about how the royal line may have come to the British Isles. Some may point out that some of this is based on legend and conjecture, and hence not proof. However, it is not offered as proof, only as an explanation of perhaps how God transferred the throne of David to the British Isles as well as showing some linguistic connections. King Heremon has also been referred to as Eochaid.¹³⁸

That said, items related to Tea Tephi are consistent with some scriptures:

¹⁹ Therefore thus says the Lord God: "As I live, surely My oath which he despised, and My covenant which he broke, I will recompense on his own head. ²⁰ I will spread My net over him, and he shall be taken in My snare. I will bring him to Babylon and try him there for the treason which he committed against Me. (Ezekiel 17:19-20)

Zedekiah despised God's covenant and was taken to Babylon (2 Kings 25:7).

²² Thus says the Lord God: "I will take also one of the highest branches of the high cedar and set it out. I will crop off from the topmost of its young twigs a tender one, and will plant it on a high and prominent mountain. (Ezekiel 17:22)

The tender twig looks like a reference to a female descendant of Zedekiah. The late John Ogwyn said this is what this means and that this princess went to Ireland with Jeremiah, then married into the royal Zerah line, and healed the breach.¹³⁹ Raymond McNair concurred and wrote that the tender twig in Ezekiel 17:22 was Tea Tephi.¹⁴⁰

Notice something from one of the primary Irish chronicles, *The Annals of the Kingdom of Ireland by the Four Masters*:

Tea, daughter of Lughaidh, son of Ith, whom Eremhon married ... the Tea who requested of Eremhon a choice hill as her dower ... that she might be interred there ... ¹⁴¹

Here are some comments related to this:

At first glance, this would seem to rule out her being the daughter of Zedekiah. However, Lughaidh may not refer to an actual person. The Irish are referred to as the “race of Lughaidh” and Ireland as “the land of Lughaidh” – “one of the many arbitrary bardic names for Ireland” (*Annals of the Four Masters*, Vol. 6, appendix).

Lughaidh in old Gaelic could mean “House of God” – broken down as Logh, “God,” and aidhe, “house, habitation, fortress” (Edward O’Reilly, *An Irish-English Dictionary*, 1821, 1864). “House of God” (Hebrew Beth-El) may have been a designation for David’s dynasty or even for the “large, rough stone” reportedly brought by Jeremiah ... ¹⁴²

Consider also:

It may be curious here to remark that the Welsh people were sometimes called Taffes or Taphies, possibly from the city of Tahpanhes (Jer. 43:7) or in memory of Tephi, the daughter of Zedekiah, to whom their loyalty is acknowledged.¹⁴³

It appears that there are some linguistic and other connections. The impact of Semitic languages in Europe, including the British Isles has been noticed by more modern scholars as well.¹⁴⁴

Before going further, perhaps it should be mentioned that a naysaying critic in at least one somewhat slick “smooth talking” video from 2022 supposedly disproving British-Israelism claimed that there were no Hebrew linguistic connections to the British Isles and that Tea Tephi was someone who was made up by researcher Frederick Glover in the 19th century. That is false.

Teah/Tea Tephi herself is mentioned in an old Irish poem from the 6th century by Amergin (also spelled Amairgen) and is referred to as Queen in a ballad from the 11th century which was translated in the *Annals of the Four Masters*¹⁴⁵ by the year 1631. The 6th century poem says that Tea married Heremon.¹⁴⁶ The 1024 ballad refers to the grave of Tea as also the tomb of Tephi, and also says, “Tephi, ‘the most beautiful.’”¹⁴⁷

The names Tea and Tephi are not hard to pick up when you look at something like the original Gaelic text that Amergin used in the 6th century as put forth below:

Cea ... Cephí ¹⁴⁸

Hence, it should be clear that Tea Tephi was not a 19th century invention.

While there are many points of view, in Tea Tephi’s case, the naysayer could have easily found out her prior historical existence (instead it looks like he got his view from *Wikipedia*, which had it wrong—and I helped correct it, though *Wikipedia* would not allow a full correction—despite

receiving clear proving references). The following passage applies to many of that naysayer's ilk:

¹⁶ The lazy man is wiser in his own eyes Than seven men who can answer sensibly. (Proverbs 26:16)

The use of smooth talkers against Christian leaders speaking truth even happened in New Testament times (Acts 24:1-8).

As far as possible biblical connections to the name Tephi, Solomon had a daughter named Taphath (1 Kings 4:11) also spelled Tephath (Brenton Septuagint Translation). Since ancient Hebrew did not have vowels, the fact that a female descent of Solomon had a name similar to Tephi would be consistent with it possibly being a derivative of the royal Hebrew name.

As far as her husband's name goes, the Hebrew Bible has the term Hermon 13 times, as the name of a mountain (mountains often picture governance scripture, e.g. Ezekiel 20:40) – and the Hebrew term for that one (Deuteronomy 3:9) could possibly be related to the name of the Heremon.

Perhaps it should be added that in the 19th century, John Goodrich claimed to translate songs and other Celtic-related sources into a poetic book he put together called *The Book of Tephi*.¹⁴⁹ Because he relied heavily on oral traditions, it has been dismissed as a forgery or otherwise questionable. Yet, since it is not proven to be a forgery, it may not be, and likely contains some statements once based on fact. It does contain many statements that support what is in this book, but it has not been a source for Tea Tephi or other references in this book.

The Red Hand

Prophecy states that the scepter would not depart from Judah (Genesis 49:10) and there are reports that there looked to have been the merging of two royal families in Ireland from the twins Judah had with Tamar (Genesis 38:24-30).

Notice the following about a breach occurring when Tamar delivered:

²⁷ Now it came to pass, at the time for giving birth, that behold, twins were in her womb. ²⁸ And so it was, when she was giving birth, that the one put out his hand; and the midwife took a scarlet thread and bound it on his hand, saying, "This one came out first." ²⁹ Then it happened, as he drew back his hand, that his brother came out unexpectedly; and she said, "How did you break through? This breach be upon you!" Therefore his name was called Perez. ³⁰ Afterward his brother came out who had the scarlet thread on his hand. And his name was called Zerah. (Genesis 38:27-30)

Since the breach was recorded in scripture it had to have some significant importance.

Hosea 12:1 teaches that Ephraim follows the "east wind," which means it would head west. The British Isles are west of the ancient land of Israel. Furthermore, Psalm 89:20-25 discusses David and that God would exalt his horn (kingdom) and hand in the sea—the British Isles are, of course, in the sea. The Bible also tells of many of Ephraim's descendants being in the north (Jeremiah 31:8-14) as well as the north and west (Isaiah 49:12), which the British Isles and Canada are.

With the verses in the preceding chapter in mind as well as the breach matters, notice some of what Raymond McNair asserted about the transfer of the throne to the British Isles:

We know, especially from the Bible (as well as from history) that Jeremiah did journey to Northern Ireland bringing the royal seed — the daughters of King Zedekiah — with him.

One of these daughters, Tea Tephi, married Prince Herimon, a descendant of Zarah, a son of Judah. Princess Tea Tephi was a descendant of Pharez, whose descendants had been reigning in Jerusalem, Palestine. This marriage united the Pharez and the Zarah line, and the “breach” (Pharez means “breach”) was at last mended.

But how do we know that the descendants of Zarah were in North Ireland?

THE RED HAND OF ULSTER

From time immemorial the people of Northern Ireland (Ulster) have used the “RED HAND” as an emblem on their heraldry. This “red hand” goes back to the time of Zarah’s birth, when a RED or SCARLET THREAD was tied around his HAND, signifying Zarah’s right to a regal position (Gen. 38:28, 29). His brother, Pharez, was born first, causing a breach.

Some of the “Scotic” people of North Ireland were descendants of the Zarah line of Judah!

“The St. George’s Cross with the ANCIENT regional emblem, the BLOOD-RED RIGHT HAND of Ulster, at its center surmounted by the Royal Crown, forms the flag of Northern Ireland. A shield bearing the similar emblem and surrounded by a wreath at the center of the Union forms the flag of the Governor of

Ireland". (Evans, *The Observer's Book of Flags*, p. 28) ¹⁵⁰

Yes, "the red hand" appears on a variety of items in that part of the world.

Tacitus, a Roman 1st/2nd century historian, wrote that some claim that the Jews were fugitives from Crete.¹⁵¹ There was a tradition, still known in the 1600s, that during the time of Solomon (c. 960 BC), some Phoenicians (who had earlier made it to Crete), were accompanied by Hebrews and reached as far as England.¹⁵² There are also claims that a descendant of Zerah, called Dara (1 Chronicles 2:6) or Darda (cf. 1 Kings 4:31), was the King Dardanus of Greek legend, and hence was from the line of Zerah.¹⁵³

One reason that may be relevant here is that it has been claimed that Heremon was from the line of Zerah, that earlier went to the Greek isle of Crete from the Middle East and to Spain and then became part of the Milesian dynasty in Ireland.¹⁵⁴ It is claimed "Heremon XXIII was born in Spain."¹⁵⁵ There is a report of the Milesian dynasty and a Heremon being part of it, but at an earlier period, that are in the 19th century book, *The Story of Ireland*.¹⁵⁶ The Milesians had connection to Crete, Scythia, Spain, and included at least one called Heremon.¹⁵⁷ The sons of Mil (the Milesians) were not from Tuatha De Danaan,¹⁵⁸ hence could have been from Judah as some assert.¹⁵⁹ The 12th century Gregory of Monmouth tied the founding of royalty in the British Isle as coming from some who had been in Troy of Greece.¹⁶⁰ In the 17th century, citing the 1st century B.C. biographer Cornelius Nepos as the source, it was claimed Helen of Troy was a British woman.¹⁶¹ According to *one* version of Plato's dialogue, Socrates ties the Milesians in with Helen of Troy.¹⁶²

A 19th century Yale professor reported that the Milesians referred to themselves as “children of the red branch—or of the Scarlet thread!” and reported that they were temporarily in Crete.¹⁶³ Related to the Milesians:

Virgil says: “Crete ora Curetum ... Et tandem antequis Curetum allabimur oris.”¹⁶⁴

Roughly translated to mean, “cured in coastal Crete ... At last, we were enticed to be by cured its mouth” (“cured” to have the scepter?).

Furthermore, in Ulster two thousand years ago, there was a military group called *Curaidhe-na-Craoibhe-Ruaidhe* which translates as “Champions” or “Knights of the Red Branch.”¹⁶⁵ Hence, the idea that Northern Ireland may have understood a red branch connection with the descendants of Zerah is not some relatively modern invention.

Yale’s Charles Totten asserted:

Heremon, ... conquered Ireland, subdued the Daanans, became their most famous prince, and eventually married Tea Tephi. In this union the Royal lines of *Zerah* and *Pharez* were made ONE.¹⁶⁶

With the joining of the royal Davidic line of King Zedekiah’s daughter Tea Tephi (from Judah’s son Perez/Pharez per Ruth 4:18-20) to the royal Prince Herimon/Heremon of Ulster from Judah’s son Zarah/Zerah¹⁶⁷ (which means “rising”), the “breach” between the families reportedly “was mended.” Both royal lines merged.

The exalting of the line of Zerah is also consistent with what was to happen to Judah after the King of Babylon conquered Judah. Ezekiel stated that the wicked king (Zedekiah¹⁶⁸) would lose the crown and things would not stay the same

(Ezekiel 21:21-26a). Ezekiel also wrote that the humble, apparently meaning a daughter and a non-Pharez descendant (like Heremon), would be exalted and Zedekiah humbled (Ezekiel 21:26b).

That said, the Freemasons have published a legend that in Ireland Jeremiah joined prince Eochaid to princess Tea Tephi:

STANDING on the deck of the ship *Herman*, which had just entered the harbor of Joppa, laden with tin from the north of Ireland, stood Eochaid, the Prince ... When the prince rode up with Tea Tephi in his arms, the prophet raised his hands and commanded the blessing of God to rest upon them. ... Jeremiah had joined the hands of the prince and princess over the sacred stone and the ark of the covenant, and looking up toward Heaven, he commanded the blessing of Israel's God to rest upon the throne of David. "For thus saith the Lord: I will overturn, overturn, overturn it, and it shall be no more until he comes whose right it is, and I will give it to him."¹⁶⁹

Although the Bible does not teach about Jeremiah joining the hands of any prince with any princess, it does mention the overturnings (Ezekiel 21:27) and a princess being moved and exalted (Ezekiel 17:22).

The Second Tamar

Perhaps it should also be mentioned that there was another Tamar (not the woman who was mother of Pharez and Zerah in Genesis 38). This Tamar was the sister of Absalom (2 Samuel 13:1) and the daughter of David's wife Maacah (2 Samuel 3:3).

Some have claimed that David brought her to Ireland because she had been defiled by her raping half-brother Amnon (2 Samuel 13:14)—and that is consistent with something quoted in an 11th century poem of Cuan O’Lochain.¹⁷⁰

If that is the case, then there could have been a royal line in Ireland from her over four centuries prior to Tea Tephi.

Stone of Destiny

As far as the “stone of destiny” goes, my wife and I saw what reportedly is it back in 1993 when it was in the coronation throne in Westminster Abby. It was not there the last time we visited Westminster Abby (2019) as it is now stored in Scotland.

According to legend, it was the coronation stone used by the kings of Judah and some think it originally was Jacob’s. Jacob had used a pillar stone as a pillow, then anointed it with oil, and said it would be “God’s house” (Genesis 28:18-22).

If that stone ended up in the first Temple under the Holy of Holies as some Jews claim,¹⁷¹ then it was not the coronation stone of scripture as that was not out in public view (cf. Leviticus 16:1-19; Hebrews 9:7-8).

During the time of that temple, the Bible points to coronations being done at/on a pillar stone that was in public, so that would not be at the Holy of Holies:

¹² ... put upon him the crown and the insignia; and they made him king, and anointed him; and... ¹⁴ ... behold, the king stood on the platform, as the manner was ... (2 Kings 11:12,14, Jewish Publication Society)

¹² ... put the crown on him, and gave him the Testimony; they made him king and anointed him, and ... ¹⁴ ... there was the king standing by a pillar according to custom; (2 Kings 11:12,14, NKJV)

During the time of Jeremiah, King Josiah of Judah made a solemn covenant at what looks to be this very same stone (2 Kings 23:3).

Various ones have asserted that the coronation stone was brought to Ireland by Jeremiah and ended up in Scotland.¹⁷² Fergus, son of Erc, is claimed to have taken it from Ireland and brought it to Scotland.¹⁷³ Some others claim that the true stone was actually kept in Ireland and a substitute was what was sent to Britain (but if so, no one seems to know where it is). Some others say that King Edward took the wrong stone and there is one hidden in Scotland, but it has not been publicly revealed if that was the case.¹⁷⁴

The stone that is currently in Scotland, that King Edward I had taken from Scotland and brought to Westminster Abbey in the late 1200s, is made from red sandstone, but does not look red at all. Some say it originated from Scone, Scotland and not from the Middle East—if so, then one or more of the transfer legends are in error. The reports that a stone was taken from Ireland to Scotland contradicts the Scottish origin of the stone, as others have noted.¹⁷⁵ Hence, the Scottish origin of the stone may not be a fact like some have asserted.¹⁷⁶

It may be of interest to note that there is red sandstone in Haran, where Jacob's pillar stone originated, as well as many other places in the Middle East, including Petra. So, it may be possible that the stone in Scotland could have come from Jeremiah, but that is not dogma as we have not scientifically

examined the stone ourselves to attempt to determine its original location.

However, it should be pointed out that the phallic stone currently at the Lia Fail on the Hill of Tara was not brought by Jeremiah. Legend says Tea Tephí removed an original phallic stone which was part of pagan worship.¹⁷⁷ After the Stone of Destiny went to Britain or otherwise left the Hill of Tara, a phallic stone was put back there and is there now.¹⁷⁸

That is consistent with reports that there were two different origins of the Lia Fail. One is that Tuatha de Danann brought it from Germany and it is an ancient pagan symbol, and the other is that a Milesian leader brought it over from Spain.¹⁷⁹ Since Tea Tephí reportedly came to Ireland via Spain,¹⁸⁰ that could explain both stones (and there could be more than two).

The following from the 19th century mentions Jeremiah and the stone:

We have seen a late work on prophecy gravely affirming that the Prophet Jeremiah died in Ireland, having been forced hither by the wandering sons of Ephraim. One of the few unquestionable facts connected with early Irish history, is the intercourse between Ireland and the Phoenicians, through Spain. The Israelitish settlers, according to the tradition, carried with them Jacob's pillow or pillar, known as the Lia Fail or Stone of Destiny, which secured a perpetual monarchy to the people so happy as to possess it. This stone, at the crowning of the first king of the Scots in Scotland, was borrowed¹⁸¹

The above legend is interesting as it looks to tie Ephraim in with the British Isles, and affirms the idea that Jeremiah also came to the isles. In the 43rd chapter of Jeremiah, Jeremiah is

shown to be with the “king’s daughters” (Jeremiah 43:1-6), but nothing like the pillar stone is mentioned with them.

That said, King Charles is expected to be coronated on a throne that will contain the ‘Stone of Scone.’¹⁸²

British Royal Family

Are there other biblical connections between the British Royal Family and the line of King David?

Yes.

When the wife of King James II, Mary/Margaret, was made Queen Consort, the ceremony in the mid-15th century tied her in with the wives of the Israeli patriarchs: Sarah (Abraham), Rebecca (Isaac), and Leah & Rachel (Jacob).¹⁸³

In the early 17th century, Stuart King James I claimed to be the King of Israel.¹⁸⁴

In 1860 and 1881, Frederick Glover wrote about the connection between the children of Israel and the British. Later, he shared information with Queen Victoria. This was then reported in a New Zealand newspaper in 1902:

FRA Glover ... was led into an examination of the Royal pedigree, ... he sent her Majesty a letter ...

The Queen’s answer ... acknowledged ... that she was already in possession of the facts of which he had spoken to her concerning her ancestral line. ...

This communication ... led him to believe that the facts were actually accepted as genuine by the Royal Family – as true and authentic.¹⁸⁵

Princess Alice, Countess of Athlone, was the last surviving granddaughter of Queen Victoria. Princess Alice was the main patron of the British-Israel-World Federation organization which formed in 1919. She attended the federation's first Congress in July 1920, and remained a patron of the BIWF until her death in January 1981.¹⁸⁶

Furthermore, notice something that the then Duke of York, who later was King George VI of Great Britain from 11 December 1936 until his death on February 6, 1952, reportedly wrote in 1922:

... I am sure the British Israelite business is true. I have read a lot about it lately and everything no matter how large or small points to our being 'the chosen race.'¹⁸⁷

So, even a recent King of Great Britain believed in British-Israelism (though Ephraimites, per say, are not the chosen race — they are recipients of certain covenant blessings).

In ancient times, God had the prophet Samuel anoint David to be king with oil from Israel (1 Samuel 16:1,13). Notice now a part of the ceremony for the coronation of Queen Elizabeth II back in 1953:

O Lord and heavenly Father, the exalter of the humble and the strength of thy chosen, who by anointing with Oil didst of old make and consecrate kings, priests, and prophets, to teach and govern thy people Israel: Bless and sanctify thy chosen servant ELIZABETH, who by our office and ministry is now to be anointed with this Oil, ... And as Solomon was anointed king by Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet, so be thou anointed, blessed, and consecrated Queen over the Peoples, whom the Lord thy God hath given thee to rule and govern,¹⁸⁸

So, we see a tie in with governance, oil, Israel, David's son Solomon and other biblical aspects. The ancient kings of Israel were anointed (1 Samuel 15:1; 1 Kings 1:34) with oil (1 Samuel 16:13). Scepters were long recognized in the Bible as a symbol for ruling (Genesis 49:10; Ezekiel 19:14) and one was given to the new Queen. Having all of these as part of a coronation ceremony may be more than a coincidence or simple imitation of what some saw in the Bible (some assert the basic ceremony originated with Bishop Dunstan of the 10th century, but it is difficult to know what was done earlier in Scotland or Ireland and if he had access to any related information).

Here is some of what was said when King Charles III was anointed with oil as part of his coronation on May 6, 2023:

Be your head anointed with holy oil, as kings, priests, and prophets were anointed. And as Solomon was anointed king by Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet, so may you be anointed, blessed, and consecrated King over the peoples, whom the Lord your God has given you to rule and govern ...¹⁸⁹

Let it be added that Jerusalem was reportedly mentioned at least three times in his coronation ceremony.¹⁹⁰ And that is where Solomon would have been anointed king.

Furthermore, the olive oil mixture to be used to anoint King Charles III was consecrated on the Mount of Olives which is adjacent to Jerusalem, and according to Justin Welby (the Archbishop of Canterbury), "ancient kings through to the present day, monarchs have been anointed with oil from this sacred place."¹⁹¹ While those "ancient kings" referred to may only go back to Crusader times, it is possible that some anointing oil was originally brought to Ireland by Jeremiah

and, in time, others decided to replenish it with an olive oil mixture from Jerusalem.

Have any in the current Royal Family believed in British Israelism?

Well, as it turns out, a longtime colleague of mine (who asked not to have his name in this book because it could impact his relationship with the Royal Family), told me on April 6, 2022, that decades ago, then Prince Charles privately told him that “he believed that the British royalty was part of the line of David, but would never say this in public or print” and that Charles seemed to know a lot about the British-Israelite matter.

Yet even if no one in the Royal Family believed in this, there are various reasons to tie the royal line to the Bible’s King David.

Now, at least one critic has cited a mistranslation of some scriptures in the 21st chapter of Ezekiel as “proof” that the royal line died out in Judea and could not make it to the British Isles. Yet properly understood, the following supports the idea of the throne going away from Judea:

¹³ Because [it is] a trier {trial}, And what if it is even despising the scepter? It will not be, a declaration of Lord YHWH. ... ²⁶ Thus said Lord YHWH: Turn aside the turban, and carry away the crown, This — not this — make high the low, And make low the high. ²⁷ An overturn, overturn, overturn, I make it, Also this has not been until the coming of Him, Whose [is] the judgment, and I have given it. (Ezekiel 21:13,26-27, Literal Standard Version)

Notice that literally translated verse 26 says that the crown will be carried away – and it was – eventually to the British Isles.

This Davidic dynasty continued, but was overturned from Judea through Tea Tephi, whose descendants became kings of Ireland. It was overturned and transplanted again in Scotland. It was overturned again and moved to London, England, where this same dynasty continues today in the reign of King Charles III.

List of Monarchs

Frederick Glover put together a list of the monarchs of Judah through Queen Victoria. As far as dates go, it is well known that there are ancient contradictory reports,¹⁹² so for anything before the 5th century A.D. dates are quite tentative.

The following is basically his list, with additions from scripture (the three kings between Josiah and Zedekiah) as well as those after Queen Victoria added by this author (a “?” indicates F. Glover did not use the letter K or Q for the specific individual) plus anything within {} were not in his list, but came from the *Royal Irish Academy*¹⁹³ which he also consulted as well as some other sources:

- K. David (B.C. 1085-1015), Bathsheba.
- K. Solomon (B.C. 1033-975), Naamah.
- K. Rehoboam (B.C. b. 1016, d. 958), Maacah.
- K. Abijam (B.C. 958-955).
- K. Asa (B.C. 955-914), Azubah.
- K. Jehoshaphat (B.C. 914-889).
- K. Jehoram (B.C. 889-885), Athaliah.
- K. Ahaziah (B.C. 906-884), Zibiah.
- K. Joash (B.C. 885-839), Jehoaddan.
- K. Amaziah (B.C. b. 864, d. 810), Jecholiah.
- K. Uzziah (B.C. b. 826, d. 758), Jerushah.

K. Jotham (B.C. b. 783, d. 742).
 K. Ahaz (B.C. b. 787, d. 726), Abi.
 K. Hezekiah (B.C. b. 751, d. 698), Hephzibah.
 K. Manasseh (B.C. b. 710, d. 643), Meshullemeth.
 K. Amon (B.C. b. 621, d. 611), Jedidah.
 K. Josiah (B.C. b. 649, d. 610), Hamutah.
 K. Jehoahaz (B.C. 610; 2 Kings 23:31)
 K. Jehoiakim (B.C. 610-599; 2 Kings 23:36)
 K. Jehoiachin (B.C. 599; 2 Kings 24:8)
 K. Zedekiah (B.C. 599-578).

KINGS OF IRELAND.

K. Heremon (fl. B.C. 580), Tea Tephi.
 K. Irial Faidh (reigned 10 years).
 K. Eithriall (reigned 20 years).
 K.? Follain.
 K. Tighernmas (reigned 50 years).
 K.? Eanbotha.
 K.? Smiorguil.
 K. Fiachadh Labhriane (reigned 24 years).
 K. Aongus Ollmuchaidh (reigned 21 years).
 K.? Maoin.
 K. Rotheachta (reigned 25 years).
 K.? Dein.
 K. Siorna Saoghalach (reigned 21 years).
 K.? Oholla Olchaoín.
 K. Giallebadh (reigned 9 years).
 K. Aodhain Glas (reigned 20 years).
 K. Simeon Breac (reigned 6 years).
 K. Muireadach Bolgrach (reigned 4 years).
 K. Fiachadh Tolgrach (reigned 7 years).
 K. Duach Laidhrach (reigned 10 years).
 K.? Eochaidh Buaigllcrg.
 K. Ugaine More the Great (reigned 30 years).
 K. Cobhthach Coalbreag (reigned 30 years).

K.? Meilage.
 K. Jaran Gleofathaeb (reigned 7 years)
 K. Coula Cruaidh Cealgach (reigned 4 years).
 K. Oiliolla Caisfhiachach (reigned 25 years).
 K. Eochaidh Foltleathan (reigned 11 years).
 K. Aongus Tuirmheach Teamharch (reigned 30 years)
 K. Eana Aighneach (reigned 28 years).
 K.? Labhra Suire.
 K.? Blathuchta.
 K.? Easamhuin Eamhua.
 K.? Roighnein Ruadh.
 K.? Finlogha.
 K.? Fian.
 K. Eodchaidh Feidhlioich (reigned 12 years).
 K.? Fineamhuas.
 K. Lughaidh Riadhdearg.
 K. Criombthan Niadhnar (reigned 16 years).
 K.? Fearaidhach Fion Feachtuigh.
 K. Fiaebadh Fionoluidh (reigned 20 years).
 K. Tuathal Teachtmar (reigned 50 years).
 K. Coun Ceadchatbach (reigned 20 years).
 K. Arb Aonflier (reigned 30 years).
 K. Cormae Usada (reigned 40 years).
 K. Caibre Liffeachair (reigned 27 years {258-283}).
 K. Fiachadh Sreabthuine (reigned 30 years {283-322}).
 {K. Colla Uias 322-326.}
 K. Muireadhach Tireach (reigned 30 years {327-357}).
 {K. Coelbadh 357-358.}
 K. Eochaidh Moigmeodhin (reigned 7 years {358-365}).
 {K. Crimmthan 366-378.}
 K. Niall of the Nine Hostages {379-405}.
 K.? Eogan {or K. Diathri 406-427}.
 K. Murireadhach {or K. Laoghaire 429-458}.
 K.? Erc {Foghan}, {princess? Earea}.

{“The ruler most closely associated with the dynastic transfer from northern Ireland to western Scotland is Fergus Mor, son of Erc.”¹⁹⁴}

KINGS OF ARGYLESHIRE (Western Scotland).

K. Feargus More (A.D. 487).
K. Dongard (d. 457).
K. Conran (d. 535).
K. Aidan (d. 604).
K. Eugene IV. (d. 622).
K. Donald IV. (d. 650).
K.? Dongard.
K.? K. Eugene V. (d. 692).
K.? Findan.
K. Eugene VII (d. A.D. 721), Spondan.
K. Effinus (d. A.D. 761), Fergina.
K. Achaius (d. A.D. 819), Fergusia.
K. Alpin (d. A.D. 834).

SOVEREIGNS OF SCOTLAND.

K. Kenneth II. (d. A.D. 854).
K. Constantin II. (d. A.D. 874).
K. Donald VI. (d. A.D. 903).
K. Malcolm I. (d. A.D. 958).
K. Kenneth III. (d. A.D. 994).
K. Malcolm II. (d. A.D. 1033).
K.? Beatrix m. Thane Albanach.
K. Duncan I. (d. A.D. 1040).
K. Malcolm III. Canmore (A.D. 1055-1093), Margaret of England.
K. David I. (d. A.D. 1153), Maud of Northumberland.
Prince Henry (d. A.D. 1152), Adama of Surrey.
Earl David (d. A.D. 1219), Maud of Chester.
Q.? Isobel m. Robert Bruce III.

K.? Robert Bruce IV. m. Isobel of Gloucester.
 K.? Robert Bruce V. m. Martha of Carriok.
 K. Robert I. Bruce (A.D. 1306-1329), Mary of Burke.
 Q.? Margary Bruce m. Walter Stewart III.
 K. Robert II (d. A.D. 1390), Euphemia of Ross (d. A.D. 1376).
 K. Robert III. (d. A.D. 1406), Arabella Drummond (d. A.D. 1401)
 K. James I (A.D. 1424-1437), Joan Beaufort.
 K. James II. (d. A.D. 1460), Margaret of Gueldres (d. A.D. 1463).
 K. James III. (d. A.D. 1488), Margaret of Denmark (d. A.D. 1484).
 K. James IV. (d. A.D. 1543), Margaret of England (d. A.D. 1539).
 K. James V. (d. A.D. 1542), Mary of Lorraine (d. A.D. 1560).
 Q. Mary (d. A.D. 1587), Lord Henry Darnley.
 K. James VI {1567-1603, then became King James I of Great Britain and moved to England in 1603}.

SOVEREIGNS OF GREAT BRITAIN.

K. James VI. and I. (A.D. 1603-1625), Ann of Denmark.
 Princess Elizabeth (1596-1613), K. Frederick of Bohemia.
 Princess Sophia m. Duke Ernest of Brunswick.
 K. George I. (1698-1727), Sophia Dorothea Zelle (1667-1726).
 K. George II. (1727-1760), Princess Caroline of Auspach (1683-1737).
 Prince Frederick of Wales (1707-1751), Princess Augusta of Saxe-Gotha.
 K. George III. (1760-1820), Princess Sophia of Mecklenburgh Strelitz (1744-1818).
 Duke Edward of Kent (1767-1820), Princess Victoria of Leiningen.
 Q. Victoria (b. 1819, cr. 1838), Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg.
 K. Edward VII (1901-1910) Q. Alexandra of Denmark.

K. George V (1910-1936), Q. Mary of Trek.
K. Edward VIII (1936-1936 – note: he was never actually crowned), Duchess Wallis Simpson.
K. George VI (1936-1952), Q. Elizabeth Bowes-Lyon.
Q. Elizabeth II (1952-2022), Prince Philip Mounbatten.
K. Charles III (2022-present), Q. Camilla Rosemary Shand.

There has been a royal succession line. A line we do not see in Africa nor Asia nor Latin America.

King James VI is credited for combining the English and Scottish crown into one. The UK Parliament was posted:

Until the early 17th century England and Scotland were two entirely independent kingdoms. This changed dramatically in 1603 on the death of Elizabeth I of England. Because the Queen had died unmarried and childless, the English crown passed to the next available heir, her cousin James VI, King of Scotland. ... In 1606 he gave orders for a British flag to be created which bore the combined crosses of St George and of St Andrew. The result was the Union Jack, Jack being a shortening of Jacobus, the Latin version of James.¹⁹⁵

So, there were some blood relations between the Scottish and English monarchs, and then they blended.

In 1957, Dr. Herman Hoeh wrote of the British Commonwealth nations being Ephraim.¹⁹⁶ As it turns out, the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand all accept the British sovereign as do a dozen (mainly island) nations who are part of the Commonwealth (there are also other Commonwealth nations, that although they do not accept the British throne, they do to a degree since they accept King Charles III as the head of the Commonwealth).

Since God declared Ephraim as His firstborn (Jeremiah 31:9), it is interesting to note that the predominant Ephraimite nations are still all directly under the “throne of David.”

Fraternal Relationship

As sons of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh were related as brothers.

Interestingly, even though the current Royals do not publicly embrace that Ephraim represents the British-descended peoples, we still see aspects of the special relationship between the USA and Australia, Canada, New Zealand, and the United Kingdom.

Back in 1946, Britain’s Winston Churchill spoke of “the fraternal association of the English-speaking peoples. He meant a special relationship between the then British Commonwealth and Empire and the United States.”¹⁹⁷

In 2011, although he likely had no biblical understanding of the matter, Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau referred to the U.S.A. and Canada as “siblings.”¹⁹⁸

In 2021, Australia, the United Kingdom, and the United States announced a new military alliance called AUKUS. This offended the Chinese as well as officials in the European Union who called it “a stab in the back”.¹⁹⁹ In 2022, it announced joint production of hypersonic weapons, which China quickly objected to.²⁰⁰

That being said, the U.S.A., Australia, Canada, New Zealand, and the United Kingdom still do have a special relationship, as well as a biblically fraternal one.

British-Israelism Noted in the 19th Century

It was not until the 19th century that it became clear that Britain was a multitude of nations. Nor, did the U.S.A. truly look to be a great nation until sometime that century, with many pointing to after the Civil War.

Notice what a writer (A.B. Robertson) who believed that Ephraim was England reported about the expansion of the British Empire:

Let us look further at the wide world scope of this Colonisation. It embraces Four Great Groups, which already together dominate no inconsiderable share of the earth's surface – 1st, the North American; 2nd, the Australian; 3rd, the West Indian; and 4th, the South African ...

The following list shows at a glance the truth and importance of this 19th century expansion, ... and the phenomenal increase of our population : –

Malta acquired by conquest ... 1800
Tasmania (Van Diemen's Land) organised ... 1803
Cape of Good Hope taken from the Dutch ... 1806
Ceylon acquired ... 1815
West Australia formed into a province ... 1829
South Australia formed into a province ... 1834
Hong Kong taken from the Chinese ... 1841
New Zealand made a separate colony ... 1841
The Punjab formally annexed ... 1849
Victoria formed into a province ... 1850
Second Burmese War: Pegu annexed ... 1852-53
Oude annexed ... 1856
India transferred to the Crown ... 1858
Queensland formed into a province ... 1859
Queen publicly proclaimed Empress of India ... 1876
Cyprus taken possession of ... 1878

New Guinea annexed by Queensland ... 1883
Upper Burmah annexed ... 1886 ²⁰¹

So, there was a lot of territorial expansion of the British Empire in the 19th century. So much so, it was said that “the sun never set” on it.

Why did this expansion begin then?

Here is an explanation from the late Dr. Herman Hoeh related to covenant prophecies in the 26th chapter of Leviticus:

Times of Israel’s Punishment a Key to Understanding

Israel was promised great national blessings, including national greatness if they would obey God. But God also promised that if they obstinately refused to obey Him, if they refused to follow His laws and let Him rule their lives, then He would punish them for a period called *seven times* (Lev. 26).

The Bible itself defines this period of seven times for us. If you turn to Revelation the twelfth chapter, and compare verses 6 and 14 you will see that the word time in prophecy simply means a year, hence seven times would be seven years or 2520 days.

Now let’s notice another key. In Numbers 14:34, God said Israel would bear their iniquities in the wilderness after the number of days they searched the land of Canaan, forty days, *each day for a year*.

Then seven times or 2520 prophetic days would equal 2520 literal years! This period of seven times or 2520 years punishment did come upon Israel because they

went their own ways and would not submit to the *rule of God*. Israel went into captivity about 721 B.C. and did not become a great people again until their times of punishment ceased about 1800 A.D. At that time the descendants of the ancient House of Israel - America and Britain and the democratic peoples of the world--began to rise to such wealth and power as the world has never enjoyed before all because of the promises made to Abraham.²⁰²

Although the birthright was originally Reuben's, he lost it and it went to Ephraim (1 Chronicles 5:1-2). As mentioned earlier, when it comes to wealth and territory, Reuben-France sold off much territory (828,000 square miles) in the form of the Louisiana Purchase to the then rising U.S.A. in 1803.

From the 19th century to present, the U.S.A. and United Kingdom have dominated the world (though this will be lost later in the 21st century). They have received the blessings that God promised them through Jacob.

Notice something that was told to the wife of Isaac:

⁶⁰ "Our sister, may you become The mother of thousands of ten thousands; And may your descendants possess The gates of those who hate them" (Genesis 24:60).

We do not see in history that the Jews possessed the gates of those who hate them. Yet, in the 19th and/or 20th centuries, many of the major sea gates of the world were possessed/controlled by the United States (Panama Canal and several locations in the Pacific ocean) and the British Empire (Straits of Malacca, Singapore, Suez Canal, Bab el Mandeb, Strait of Hormuz, Hong Kong, Simon's Town/Cape of Good Hope, etc.). And while that is no longer

the case for many of them, they seem to have been prophesied to be taken away for disobedience as well:

⁵⁸ “If you do not carefully observe all the words of this law that are written in this book, that you may fear this glorious and awesome name, THE LORD YOUR GOD, ⁵⁹ then the Lord will bring upon you and your descendants extraordinary plagues – great and prolonged plagues – and serious and prolonged sicknesses. ... ⁶³ And it shall be, that just as the Lord rejoiced over you to do you good and multiply you, so the Lord will rejoice over you to destroy you and bring you to nothing; and you shall be plucked from off the land which you go to possess. (Deuteronomy 28:58-59,63).

Certainly, these nations have disobeyed the God of Abraham. It appears that the remaining “sea gates” that the UK has such as Gibraltar and the Falkland Islands will be separated from UK control.

Partially related to the prophecy about Joseph’s bow being strong in Deuteronomy 33:22-26, the Jews have a tradition that the descendants of Joseph would reign over the ten tribes in a military way:

The Malibim (1809-1879) on Masiach ben Yosef

#Our Sacred Sages had a tradition in the beginning

[of the End Times] there would arise a Messiah [i.e. Anointed Savior] from the House of Joseph, who will reign over the Ten Tribes. He will wage war and all of Israel will be gathered under his banner.²⁰³

While the U.K. and later the U.S.A. did not necessarily officially rule over the other ten tribes and no one Messiah

came up from them, they led the allied fight in World War II and had support from descendants from almost all the tribes of Israel. The U.S.A. and U.K. have ruled the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) which directly includes the descendants of most (and in a way, all) of the tribes, and plus the U.S.A. and U.K. have also provided some type of protection to all of the other tribes.

That being said, the Bible warns about trusting in Mount Samaria (prophetically, the U.S.A.) in the end times (Amos 6:1) – which Australia, Canada, New Zealand, and the UK do militarily.

Here is a bit more from a Jewish source:

The Malbim {Meir Leibush ben Yehiel Michel Wisser} interprets the blessing of Jacob (Genesis 48) to Ephraim would become great before Manasseh. Ephraim would become great through his own merits and self-assertion almost from the beginning. Manasseh would wait until the vast numbers of his population and the weight of his blessing would of itself result in greatness. We identify Ephraim with the British and Canada, Australia, New Zealand, the whites of South Africa. The USA is Manasseh. The interpretation of the Malbim concerning Ephraim and Manasseh fits historic reality.²⁰⁴

And Ephraim did arise first, followed by Manasseh's rise.

As far as being helpful to understand end time prophecy goes, COG leaders taught decades ago that the United Kingdom would not be part of the final European power. Notice something from Raymond McNair in 1970:

Britain ... *if* she does enter the European Economic Community (EEC), will she *remain* in this union? ...

Bible prophecy clearly shows that Britain will *not* be one of the ... NATIONS comprising the *final* United States of Europe.²⁰⁵

Back in the early 1990s, when I was vice president of an irrigation equipment manufacturer and the EU was still called the European Economic Community, I told our British sales representative, who was visiting the factory in California, that one day the UK would separate from Europe. He flat out told me that could not possibly happen. And he gave his reasons, but they were not biblical ones—I told him he was in error. With Brexit (the **BR**itish **EX**IT from the European Union) this century, that understanding was confirmed.

More prophetic understandings will be confirmed as well, including the fact that the “fortress also will cease from Ephraim” (Isaiah 17:3) and the coming European Beast “shall destroy many in their prosperity” (Daniel 8:25).

Samaria

Some Christians have taught that:

The peoples of the United States and Britain are actually descended from the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, which were part of the kingdom of Israel. The United States and Britain are often referred to in biblical prophecy as the “house of Israel,” “all Israel,” “Jacob,” “Ephraim,” “Samaria” and “Isaac.”²⁰⁶

As far as the U.S.A. goes, some may wonder about its high degree of ethnic diversity.

By Jesus’ time, the Samaritans were only partially, Israelites—even though they claimed to be from the tribe of Joseph.²⁰⁷ The Bible shows that they were highly ethnically

mixed (2 Kings 17:24). Apparently, though, those of Samaritan cities were not considered Israelitish by Jesus (cf. Matthew 10:5). Yet, Peter, Philip, and John later did preach to people in a Samaritan city (Acts 8:5,14).

As it turns out, some of the prophecies related to Manasseh instead refer to it as Samaria:

⁸ The Lord sent a word against Jacob, And it has fallen on Israel. ⁹ All the people will know – Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria ... ²¹ Manasseh shall devour Ephraim, and Ephraim Manasseh; Together they shall be against Judah. (Isaiah 9:8-9,21)

¹ “When I would have healed Israel, Then the iniquity of Ephraim was uncovered, And the wickedness of Samaria. (Hosea 7:1)

So, we see that Ephraim and Samaria are separate and at the end Ephraim and Manasseh (who was referred to as Samaria by Isaiah and Hosea) are separate. Hence, while Ephraim is not Samaria, sometimes it appears that Manasseh is (cf. Hosea 7:1). Isaiah 9 seems to suggest that some of peoples who are alluded to in Psalm 83 (discussed later) will also harass Ephraim and Manasseh after they have suffered. Isaiah 9 ties the identity of Manasseh in with prophetic Samaria – Amos 6:1, Jeremiah 31:5-6, and Obadiah 19 seem too as well.

In addition to the intermingling that occurred in ancient Samaria, Samaria was part of the old territory of Manasseh:

The hill of Samaria was in the tribal territory of Manasseh, but apparently was not significantly inhabited until the time of King Omri (Ahab’s father). For the next 160 years, the city was the capital of the northern kingdom, apparently reaching a size of 150

acres (as large as Jerusalem in Hezekiah's time). Samaria is well situated with steep slopes on all sides.²⁰⁸

²³ Omri became king over Israel, and reigned twelve years. Six years he reigned in Tirzah. ²⁴ And he bought the hill of Samaria from Shemer for two talents of silver; then he built on the hill, and called the name of the city which he built, Samaria, after the name of Shemer, owner of the hill. (1 Kings 16:23-24)

Northern Samaria is often referred to by its biblical tribal designation: Manasseh.²⁰⁹

Jewish scholars have, also, long recognized that the Samaritans were of mixed Israelite and non-Israelite heritage.²¹⁰ Scripture shows that some of the poorer Israelites were allowed to remain as laborers and not be taken away by the Babylonians (2 Kings 25:12), hence they apparently interbred with the peoples the Assyrians brought to their ancestral land (2 Kings 17:24).

Scripturally, some have pointed to 2 Chronicles 34:9 as further proof that there were descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim that remained in Samaria (or perhaps returned there). Furthermore, since Herodotus reported that Scythian armies entered Palestine²¹¹ in what is considered to be the Samaritan region, some may have sired children and/or stayed there.

That said, the 16th century Jewish sage Isaac Arbarbanel equated prophecies of Samaria to being the tribe of Manasseh.²¹²

It is interesting to note that while a mixture of peoples, those identifying themselves as Samaritans have claimed to be from the tribe of Joseph. A Midrash from 300-500 A.D.

(Genesis Rabbah Sect. 94,) relates about an encounter between a Jewish rabbi and a Samaritan and includes the following dialogue:

R. Meir asks the Samaritan: What tribe are you from?

The Samaritan answers: From Joseph.

R. Meir: No! ²¹³

The following from a Jewish source related to Obadiah:

[Obadiah 1:19] AND THEY OF THE SOUTH SHALL POSSESS THE MOUNT OF ESAU; AND THEY OF THE PLAIN THE PHILISTINES: AND THEY SHALL POSSESS THE FIELDS OF EPHRAIM, AND THE FIELDS OF SAMARIA: AND BENJAMIN SHALL POSSESS GILEAD.

Samaria means Menasseh (says Daat Sofrim) who according to Rashi shall possess the Gilead.²¹⁴

Yes, there are reasons to consider that Manasseh is prophetic Samaria.

As far as those calling themselves Samaritans in the Holy Land in the 21st century, the *Israelite Samaritan Information Institute* has claimed that there are Samaritan descendants of the houses of Manasseh and Ephraim there.²¹⁵ Some believe that the Samaritans have forgotten their true ancestry.²¹⁶

That being said, the ethnic diversity of the population of the United States, with the majority seemingly not being Manassites, is consistent with it representing prophetic Samaria.

A 9/11 Prophecy? Foreign Policy?

It has been suggested that the following is a prophecy related to the terrorist attacks of 9/11/2001:²¹⁷

⁹ All the people will know — Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria — Who say in pride and arrogance of heart: ¹⁰ “The bricks have fallen down, But we will rebuild with hewn stones; The sycamores are cut down, But we will replace them with cedars.” (Isaiah 9:9-10)

A few prophecy-watchers have stated that Isaiah 9:9-10 seems to be related to what happened in the U.S.A. because of the 9/11/2001 attacks.

Essentially the leaders of ancient Ephraim and Manasseh declared that they would rebuild. As one example, at a memorial ceremony for it, Joe Biden stated, “We come not to mourn but to remember and rebuild.” ²¹⁸

At least one prophecy-watcher has believed that American politicians making “rebuild statements” were taking *defiance* types of positions that Isaiah warned against.²¹⁹ Like ancient Ephraim and Manasseh, God was left out of the equation.

Since certain prophecies about Samaria appear to be directed towards the U.S.A. of the 21st century, this makes those ties to Isaiah 9 potentially stronger.

Presuming that end-time Samaria ties in with Manasseh AND Isaiah 9:9-10 has an end-time fulfillment, then Joe Biden has been one of several leaders to at least partially fulfill this prophecy by pridefully boasting that a more majestic rebuilding will occur because of human effort.

If the following biblical prophecy has an end-time fulfillment, it seems to suggest that a male leader will be in charge when the U.S.A. falls:

⁷ As for Samaria, her king is cut off Like a twig on the water. ⁸ Also the high places of Aven, the sin of Israel, Shall be destroyed. The thorn and thistle shall grow on their altars; They shall say to the mountains, "Cover us!" And to the hills, "Fall on us!" ... ¹⁰ When it is My desire, I will chasten them. Peoples shall be gathered against them When I bind them for their two transgressions. (Hosea 10:7,8,10)

If Hosea 10:7-10 has end-time connotations (and part of it seems to, cf. Revelation 6:16), AND presuming that the Hebrew word translated as "king" literally must mean a male, then it would seem that the last USA president would be male (though the expression "her king" might speculatively allow for the final leader to be female).

The Bible, KJV translation, predicts the end of "an hypocritical nation" (Isaiah 10:5-11).

Since, the end of the 6,000 years God has granted humanity to rule itself may be over within the next decade or so (some details are in Chapter 7), the end of the hypocritical nation will come relatively soon.

Immorality

In view of Big Tech and governmental censorship, as well as their pushing certain agendas this century, consider some of what the Bible says and teaches:

⁸ Now go, write it before them on a tablet, And note it on a scroll, That it may be for time to come, Forever and ever:

⁹ That this is a rebellious people, Lying children, Children who will not hear the law of the Lord;

¹⁰ Who say to the seers, “Do not see,”

And to the prophets, “Do not prophesy to us right things; Speak to us smooth things, prophesy deceits.

¹¹ Get out of the way, Turn aside from the path, Cause the Holy One of Israel To cease from before us.” (Isaiah 30:8-11)

²⁰ Woe to those who call evil good, and good evil; Who put darkness for light, and light for darkness; Who put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter! ²¹ Woe to those who are wise in their own eyes, And prudent in their own sight! (Isaiah 5:20-21)

¹ Cry aloud, spare not; Lift up your voice like a trumpet; Tell My people their transgression, And the house of Jacob their sins. (Isaiah 58:1)

More and more people do not want to hear the truths related to the law of God or prophecies from His word.

Consider also that if some say they are insulted because their sins are called out, at least some associated with European and North American governments want to make that a crime!²²⁰ Teaching the truth about biblical prophecies can now often be falsely called “conspiracy theories” as many only want to hear “smooth things.”

Furthermore, various ones want to further stifle religious speech to the point of persecuting those who hold to aspects of biblical morality. The Bible warns of those “who suppress the truth in unrighteousness” (Romans 1:18).

Sadly, many are helping to fulfill the following prophecy for the “last days”:

¹ But know this, that **in the last days** perilous times will come: ² For **men will be lovers of themselves**, lovers of money, **boasters, proud, blasphemers**, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, ³ unloving, unforgiving, **slanderers, without self-control, brutal, despisers of good**, ⁴ traitors, **headstrong, haughty**, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God, ⁵ having a form of godliness but denying its power. And **from such people turn away!** ⁶ For of this sort are those who creep into households and make captives of gullible women loaded down with sins, led away by various lusts, ⁷ **always learning and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.** (2 Timothy 3:1-7)

Proud, boasters, lovers of themselves, and headstrong; if you do not believe these terms help describe people like some in various governments, consider that there are those that push “pride” events and have asserted that religious rights need to be scaled back.

Is that not headstrong and haughty?

With debt and rising public immorality, many have been setting the stage for the type of death/devastation that the Apostle Paul warned about:

²² Professing to be wise, they became fools, ...

²⁶ For this reason God gave them up to vile passions. For even their women exchanged the natural use for what is against nature. ²⁷ Likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust for one another, men with men committing what is shameful, and receiving in themselves the penalty of their error which was due.

²⁸ And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a debased mind, to do those things which are not fitting; ²⁹ being filled with all unrighteousness, sexual immorality, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, evil-mindedness; they are whisperers, ³⁰ backbiters, haters of God, violent, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, ³¹ undiscerning, untrustworthy, unloving, unforgiving, unmerciful; ³² who, knowing the righteous judgment of God, that **those who practice such things are deserving of death, not only do the same but also approve of those who practice them.** (Romans 1:22,26-32)

The above scriptures are clearly condemning covetousness, sexual immorality, and that even approving of them leads to death.

God's righteous judgment is coming to the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies.

Notice also:

²² Therefore say to the house of Israel, "Thus says the Lord God: "I do not do this for your sake, O house of Israel, but for My holy name's sake, which you have profaned among the nations wherever you went. ²³ you from all your filthiness and from all your idols." (Ezekiel 36:22-23)

With international promotion of immoral matters, the USA and its British-descended allies have been profane among the nations.

Furthermore, understand that the Bible specifically teaches that various forms of sexual immorality defile a nation:

²² You shall not lie with a male as with a woman. It is an abomination. ²³ Nor shall you mate with any animal, to defile yourself with it. Nor shall any woman stand before an animal to mate with it. It is perversion.

²⁴ 'Do not defile yourselves with any of these things; for by all these the nations are defiled, which I am casting out before you. ²⁵ For the land is defiled; therefore I visit the punishment of its iniquity upon it, and the land vomits out its inhabitants. ²⁶ You shall therefore keep My statutes and My judgments, and shall not commit any of these abominations, either any of your own nation or any stranger who dwells among you ²⁷ (for all these abominations the men of the land have done, who were before you, and thus the land is defiled), ²⁸ lest the land vomit you out also when you defile it, as it vomited out the nations that were before you. ²⁹ For whoever commits any of these abominations, the persons who commit them shall be cut off from among their people. (Leviticus 18:22-29)

⁵ For this you know, that no fornicator, unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God. ⁶ Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the wrath of God comes upon the sons of disobedience. (Ephesians 5:5-6)

Some believe scripture, others will not.

Weather Prophecies

The Bible ties weather blessings in with morality:

³ 'If you walk in My statutes and keep My commandments, and perform them, ⁴ then I will give

you rain in its season, the land shall yield its produce, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. ⁵ Your threshing shall last till the time of vintage, and the vintage shall last till the time of sowing; you shall eat your bread to the full and dwell in your land safely. (Leviticus 26:3-5)

Yet, the promotion of more and more aspects of immorality will lead to the destruction of the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies (cf. Isaiah 1:28; Hosea 7:13), and also looks to include in the curse of severe weather problems.

Notice some of how the Bible ties weather in with sins:

¹⁵ “But it shall come to pass, if you do not obey the voice of the Lord your God, to observe carefully all His commandments and His statutes which I command you today, that all these curses will come upon you and overtake you: ... ²² The Lord will strike you with consumption, with fever, with inflammation, with severe burning fever, with the sword, with scorching, and with mildew; they shall pursue you until you perish. ²³ And your heavens which are over your head shall be bronze, and the earth which is under you shall be iron. ²⁴ The Lord will change the rain of your land to powder and dust; from the heaven it shall come down on you until you are destroyed. (Deuteronomy 28:15,22-24)

¹ The word of the Lord that came to Jeremiah concerning the droughts. ... ⁷ O Lord, though our iniquities testify against us, ... For our backslidings are many, We have sinned against You. (Jeremiah 14:1,7)

⁶ “Also I gave you cleanness of teeth in all your cities. And lack of bread in all your places; Yet you have not

returned to Me, "Says the Lord. ⁷ I also withheld rain from you, When there were still three months to the harvest. I made it rain on one city, I withheld rain from another city. One part was rained upon, And where it did not rain the part withered. ⁸ So two or three cities wandered to another city to drink water, But they were not satisfied; Yet you have not returned to Me, "Says the Lord.

⁹ "I blasted you with blight and mildew. When your gardens increased, Your vineyards, Your fig trees, And your olive trees, The locust devoured them; Yet you have not returned to Me, "Says the Lord. ...

¹¹ "I overthrew some of you, As God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah, And you were like a firebrand plucked from the burning; Yet you have not returned to Me, "Says the Lord.

¹² "Therefore thus will I do to you, O Israel; Because I will do this to you, Prepare to meet your God, O Israel!" (cf. Amos 4:6-9, 11-12).

Many feel that weather is purely random, but the Bible teaches that God controls the weather (Psalm 148:8) and sometimes provides extreme weather because of human sins to encourage people to repent. Weather issues will contribute to pestilences (Amos 4:9; cf. Matthew 24:7).

Notice what is also prophesied to happen to end-time European Babylon:

³⁸ A drought is against her waters, and they will be dried up. For it is the land of carved images, And they are insane with their idols. ³⁹ "Therefore the wild desert beasts shall dwell there with the jackals, And the ostriches shall dwell in it. It shall be inhabited no

more forever, Nor shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation. ⁴⁰ As God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah And their neighbors,” says the Lord, “So no one shall reside there, Nor son of man dwell in it. (Jeremiah 50:38-40)

So, both Amos and Jeremiah tied the warning of a drought in with later being overthrown like Sodom and Gomorrah.

The Bible says that Sodom and Gomorrah were overthrown as examples for those who would go after “strange flesh” (Jude 7).

Related to end-time sorrows, the following was in a book I wrote and published back in 2009²²¹:

Odd weather patterns result in food shortages and natural disasters.	Matthew 24:7
The world is actually in a berserk transition, as the real age of peace is not yet here. It may be a period of chaos. It is the beginning of sorrows.	Matthew 24:8

This has begun to happen. Record heat and odd weather have occurred.²²²

These problems should serve as a wake-up call. Increased acceptance of immorality is associated with weather problems in the Bible in many places (e.g. Deuteronomy 28:15-24; Amos 4:6-12).

Expect that there will be more odd and berserk weather. Many blame it on “climate change” and “fossil fuels,” but the Bible promises climate blessings on obedience to Him (e.g. Leviticus 26:3-6) blames the opposite on disobeying

God's commands and not repenting (e.g. Amos 4:6-9; Haggai 2:17).

Dealing with "fossil fuels," without dealing with sins will not stop a coming massive heat—particularly the one that happens after the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies are no more (Revelation 16:9).

Debt Disaster Coming

The U.S.A. and U.K. have greatly increased their debts this century.

The Bible warns that debt, and having to borrow from foreigners, is a curse that would hit those who received various biblical blessings as they became more disobedient (Deuteronomy 28:15,43-46).

Debt is dangerous.

Let us also consider that there is a prophecy in Habakkuk, written about 2600 years ago, about debt which is preceded by the following:

² Then the Lord answered me and said:

Write the vision And make it plain on tablets, That he may run who reads it. (Habakkuk 2:2)

The Bible says that the 'debt prophecy' to be revealed later in Habakkuk 2 is so significant that those who read it should run—essentially that they should take steps because the results will be horrific.

The Bible warns about something that will happen to a heavily indebted nation. Notice what the Hebrew seer Habakkuk wrote over 2,600 years ago:

³ For the vision is yet for an **appointed time; But at the end** it will speak, and it will not lie. Though it tarries, wait for it; Because **it will surely come**, It will not tarry ... ⁵ Indeed, because he transgresses by wine, He is a proud man ... ⁶ “Will not all these take up a proverb against him, And a taunting riddle against him, and say, ‘Woe to him who increases What is not his—how long? And to him who loads himself with many pledges?’ ⁷ **Will not your creditors rise up suddenly?** Will they not awaken who oppress you? **And you will become their booty.** ⁸ Because you have plundered many nations, **All the remnant of the people shall plunder you...** (Habakkuk 2:3,5-8).

Notice that what is to happen is so bad that people who read the prophecy should run when it is time for it to be fulfilled. Since that prophecy is to be fulfilled at the appointed time of the end, it is still for the future, but perhaps not too far distant in the future. No nation has seemingly ever been in as much total debt as the U.S.A. (official federal debt over \$31 trillion, plus unfunded liabilities, plus other government debt, plus corporate debt, and personal debt) and on a *per capita* basis Australia, Canada, and the U.K. are almost as bad. This is also consistent with the understanding that the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies will be hit during the time of Jacob’s trouble (Jeremiah 30:7). It should also be noted that creditors, plural, are mentioned. For this reason, we may see actions by the oil-rich Arab nations, China, and Japan, and not just Europe, in opposing the USA as they are all significant holders of USA debt.

The Bible warns about silver becoming “dross” (Isaiah 1:22; Ezekiel 22:18-22) and says to reverse it once it happens (Proverbs 25:4a; Isaiah 1:25). But the Anglo-American nations have not done that, their old silver coins are now dross (made/filled with cheaper materials) and their massive

debts have made drop out of their fiat currencies (currencies that are not tied to gold or some other hard asset).

Furthermore, the “U.S. is highly vulnerable to loss of confidence by foreign creditors.”²²³ U.S. government debt is “extremely vulnerable to foreign attack because of the high percentage of foreign ownership — almost 40% of the market.”²²⁴

Interestingly, in the past, one foreign creditor, China, has raised concerns about the U.S. debt that are so serious, that its potential dumping of that debt has been called China’s “nuclear option”²²⁵ against the U.S.A.—an option that involves no military intervention, but that could greatly harm the U.S.A.

Many have complained about the U.S.A. “weaponizing” its dollar through sanctions, bank restrictions, and other means.²²⁶ By doing so, the U.S.A. has inadvertently been building up a coalition to push aside the dollar—and this will happen when the timing is considered to be better. European leaders have been working for years to establish a new reserve currency for the world, partially with the intent to remove the U.S. dollar from its position as the world’s primary reserve currency. The fact that Europe would develop its own currency, as well as for that purpose, was predicted by Church of God writers no later than 1971²²⁷ – which is over two decades before the euro was officially agreed to.

Those in Iran and some of the Arab lands, along with nations such as Brazil, China, and India have discussed plans for the removal of the dominance of the U.S.A. in global trade as well. The former (again current) President of Brazil, Luiz Inácio Lula da Silva, even claimed that eliminating the U.S. dollar’s reserve currency status was one of the reasons that

the BRICS alliance (Brazil, Russia, India, China, and South Africa) was formed in the first place.²²⁸ Others have noted that bypassing the USA dollar is still an object of BRICS—and officially BRICS nations “are currently working on setting up a new global reserve currency,”²²⁹ which may have gold-backing.²³⁰ The expansion of BRICS (which is in progress²³¹) may ultimately even hurt Australian trade as well as “severely weaken primacy of the US Dollar as an international currency.”²³²

The Bible clearly warns against cheapening the money supply and encourages having money hold its value (Proverbs 25:4 Isaiah 1:25, Ezekiel 22:18-22). Debt is also warned against (Habakkuk 2:6-8). Yet policies enacted under the Obama, Trump, and Biden Administrations, following certain other administrations, have ignored these warnings.

Destruction is coming.

However, the relationship between debt accumulation and prophesied destruction remains unapparent to many. Because there is a time lag, many ignore that there will be real consequences (cf. Ecclesiastes 8:11; Habakkuk 2:3,6-8). Yet, massive increases of debt are utterly dangerous.

When the time comes that the Federal Reserve is no longer able to keep interest rates low enough, the U.S.A. will continue past the point of no return. That will become one of the final factors that will cause creditors to rise up and destroy the U.S.A.

The Economy

While pushing biblically immoral ideas and massively accumulating debt are bad for the real economy, it should be noted that economies vary. A modern reality is that being

the world's *de facto* reserve currency has helped prolong the U.S.A.'s dominance.

When the U.S. dollar is no longer the world's reserve currency, this will hurt the U.S.A. financially. Increasing debt, including "quantitative easing," is a form of dishonest profits that is not something that God approves of and will correctively punish the U.S.A. for (cf. Ezekiel 22:13-16).

Inflation will eventually hit the U.S.A. extremely hard. As the world becomes less attached to the American dollar, many financial jobs and opportunities will be in places other than the U.S.A. Eventually, but not yet, the U.S.A. dollar will become worthless (worth no more than the scrap or sentimental value of the cotton-paper it is printed on). The same will basically happen to the British pound, as well as the Australian, Canadian, and New Zealand dollars.

Will it always be straight downhill for the economy of the U.S.A. or its British-descended allies?

No.

There are some reasons to have some temporary optimism. The U.S.A. has a wide diversity of agricultural, manufacturing, extraction (mining/pumping) and other industries as do its British-descended allies. In addition, technological and other developments may temporarily support the U.S. economy – as can reductions of regulatory burdens.

As far as delays to the end of the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies go, consider something that was told to a king who was prophesied to lose his kingdom:

²⁷ Therefore, O king, let my advice be acceptable to you; break off your sins by being righteous, and your iniquities by showing mercy to the poor. Perhaps there may be a lengthening of your prosperity. (Daniel 4:27)

Repentance can prolong prosperity, but promotion of sin leads to destruction. However, it is not expected top U.S.A. leaders nor those of its British-descended allies will push for scriptural national repentance.

The Bottom Line

Like many politicians, many American and British-descended ones do not meet the following leadership criteria:

²¹ Moreover you shall select from all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; (Exodus 18:21)

³ The God of Israel said, The Rock of Israel spoke to me: 'He who rules over men must be just, Ruling in the fear of God. (2 Samuel 23:3)

This does not bode well for the U.S.A. nor its British-descended allies.

Furthermore, the Bible warns against the type of moral decline that is occurring in those nations:

¹² Therefore thus says the Holy One of Israel: **"Because you despise this word, And trust in oppression and perversity, And rely on them,** ¹³ **Therefore this iniquity shall be to you** Like a breach ready to fall, A bulge in a high wall, Whose breaking comes **suddenly, in an instant.** (Isaiah 30:12-13)

But how can this happen to the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies? It will likely happen with a combination of events.

Notice:

⁵ “Moreover the multitude of your foes Shall be like fine dust, And the multitude of the terrible ones Like chaff that passes away; Yes, it shall be in an instant, suddenly. ⁶ You will be punished by the Lord of hosts with thunder and earthquake and great noise, With storm and tempest and the flame of devouring fire. (Isaiah 29:5-6)

Disaster will come suddenly, as in an instant.

The debt situation of the U.S.A. is putting it at risk of being unable to recover should it be hit by weather problems, terrorist acts, war, riots, solar flares, severe earthquakes, civil unrest, “terror within” (Deuteronomy 32:25), devastation of their genetically-modified food supplies, food shortages, and/or various pestilences—an intensity of “sorrows” such as Jesus discussed in Matthew 24:4-8 leading up to the time of the Great Tribulation. Political issues, climate change, trade policies, communication’s deals, and other events are pushing the U.S.A. to a position that will encourage its takeover someday.

The Bible warns that God will “hurl disasters” against some descended from Israel (Deuteronomy 32:23, NJB) who “provoke” God (Deuteronomy 32:21-22, NKJV). Disasters, especially if there is an ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) attack, a severe solar flare storm, devastating hurricane (s) something like a massive volcanic eruption and/or massive earthquake could be part of a so-called “perfect storm” of events that could set up the U.S.A. for destruction.

Consider the devastation of New Orleans by Hurricane Katrina. Multiply that by other disasters. The U.S.A. is at risk. Notice, also, the following related to Dr. Michio Kaku's assessment of Yellowstone:

Scientists assure us that one day the absolutely massive Yellowstone supervolcano will once again experience a Category 8 eruption, and if it happened today it would "literally tear the guts out of the United States of America" ... "Instead of having 50 states of the Union, we would have 30 states of the Union." ²³³

Even something lessor than that at Yellowstone or the Cascades or elsewhere could have devastating consequences. A 'perfect storm' of disasters, internal strife, and misplaced confidences will help make the U.S.A. a nation that can be defeated. Without the U.S.A., its British-descended allies simply do not have the military ability to hold off major military powers.

Many sorrows that the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies will face, like severe weather problems, diseases and earthquakes, will worsen in the future (Amos 4:7-10; Luke 21:11). The political leadership in those lands looks to hasten the day of destruction.

The end of the Anglo-American dominated world order of the past two or so centuries is coming to an end.

5. Gentile Europeans

The Bible tells of a coming time when Anglo-American dominance will be eliminated (Isaiah 17:3a; Jeremiah 30:7; Daniel 8:24-25, 11:39). A temporal 'new world order' is to come during the final times of the Gentiles, which is prophesied to arise (cf. Ezekiel 30:3; Luke 21:24; Revelation 11:2)—which will include “the worst of the Gentiles” to eliminate the Anglo-American world order as well as to eventually hit those of the other tribes of Israel (cf. Ezekiel 7:24).

Europe has a mix of peoples, traditions, and languages. Though there are people of Israelitish descent mixed in, most people in Europe are non-Israelites, scripturally often referred to as Gentiles.

As far as European nations go, sometimes they were independent and at other times parts of alliances like the old 'Holy Roman Empire' and the Axis powers of World War II.

As far as where European nations descended from, the following list was mainly produced by a Church of God minister in the 20th century with some 21st century slight updates to address that:

Nation/Area Progenitor(s) in Genesis

Albania	Lud or Canaan
Austria	Asshur/Gether
Belarus	Madai/Midian
Belgium	Asher/Dodanim
Bulgaria	Elam/Esau
Crete	Caphtor

Cyprus	Javan/Sidon/Esau
Czech Republic	Nahor
Denmark	Dan/Naphtali
Estonia	Letushim [Keturah]
Finland	Issachar/Riphath
France	Reuben/Dodanim
Germany	Asshur
Greece	Javan
Hungary	Keturah/Riphath
Iceland	Benjamin
Ireland	Dan/Simeon
Italy, North	Chesed [Chaldeans]
Italy, South	Javan & Canaan
Latvia	Letushim [Keturah]
Lithuania	Letushim [Keturah]
Luxembourg	Asher/Dodanim/ Asshur
Macedonia	Elam/Javan
Malta	Canaan
Moldova	Chaldeans/Madai
Netherlands	Zebulun
Norway	Benjamin
Poland	Elam/Aram
Portugal	Javan/Canaan
Romania	Chesed [Chaldeans]
Rhodes	Javan
Russia	Madai/Meshech
Siberia	Togarmah

Sicily	Canaan
Slovakia	Buz
Spain, North	Aram/Chesed
Spain, South	[Chaldeans]
	Canaan & Javan
Sweden	Naphtali
Switzerland	Gad/Asshur
Turkey	Esau [Edom]
United Kingdom	Ephraim
Ukraine	Madai/Medan
Yugoslavia	Elam/Madai

While many of the above can be debated, since everyone had to descend from someone, and few modern national names are in the Bible, the above list can sometimes give us clues about what is prophesied for the peoples of the different lands in Europe.

As far as microstates and microregions in Europe, such as Andorra, Liechtenstein, Monaco, San Marino, and Vatican City go, their prophetic future will be tied in with the coming European Beast power. However, scripture teaches that the one associated with the ruling power of seven hills will be betrayed by supporters of the Beast (Revelation 17:14-18), before the others would be subject to destruction (cf. Revelation 18).

European Unity?

Europe has had unity in the past under what was called “Pax Romana” — “peace” enforced by the ancient Roman Empire. There were also partial unifications under the so-called Holy

Roman Empire, French Empire, the Austro-Hungarian Empire, and the Axis powers.

Towards the end of World War II, the three small European nations of Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg agreed to form a trading alliance known as Benelux.

On the surface that may not seem like much, but interestingly, Bible prophecy teaches that a small power in the Europe will expand mainly to the south and the east.

⁹ And out of one of them came a little horn which grew exceedingly great toward the south, toward the east, and toward the Glorious Land. ... ¹⁷ ... the vision refers to the time of the end. (Daniel 8:9,17)

Benelux, itself, became a model for the European Economic Community (EEC), and then the formation of the European Union. This united Europe has mainly expanded south and east of the Benelux nations. Like several other Church of God writers, Gene Hogberg asserted last century that the Benelux nations would be part of the coming Beast power.²³⁴

Currently, approximately 450 million people are now under a new, single (though not completely united) government, called the European Union, headquartered in the Benelux land of Brussels, Belgium. The coming Beast will have some ties there.

In 1965, the late evangelist Dr. Hoeh taught:

This “little horn” does the same thing as the final “beast” of Revelation 17! ...

Daniel 8 ... verse 9: “And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great,

toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land." ...

The little horn in Daniel 8 is none other than ... the final "King of the North" described in Daniel 11.²³⁵

Note: There is another "little horn" mentioned in Daniel 7:8, which is a reference to a religious leader, which would be the Antichrist – different Hebrew words are used there than in Daniel 8, but translators have often missed the difference.

Anyway, the final King of the North is a European empire that a man, also called the Beast of the Sea will rule in the end times. He will unify Europe in a way that it has never been unified before (cf. Revelation 17:12-13).

While many have noticed that the European Union is not currently getting along that well even amongst its own member nations, the Bible specifically warns that the final European Beast power will be composed of parts that do not hold well together:

⁴¹ The feet you saw, part earthenware, part iron, are a kingdom which will be split in two, but which will retain something of the strength of iron, just as you saw the iron and the clay of the earthenware mixed together. ⁴² The feet were part iron, part potter's clay: the kingdom will be partly strong and partly brittle. ⁴³ And just as you saw the iron and the clay of the earthenware mixed together, so the two will be mixed together in human seed; but they will not hold together any more than iron will blend with clay. (Daniel 2:41-43).

But, the Bible shows that Europe will stay together for a time under the leader known as the King of the North

(Daniel 11:40) and the “Beast of the Sea” (Revelation 13:1-10).

U.S.A.-European Relations

While there have long been difficulties in the relationship between the U.S.A. and Europe, some issues have seriously worsened them in the past dozen or so years. And the same is true for UK-EU relations.

The Obama-Biden Administration greatly offended the Europeans when the Europeans found out via Edward Snowden’s release of documents that the Americans were spying on the European Union (E.U.) itself, spying on European leaders, and because they learned that the U.S.A. treated the others in the Five Eyes much better than the Europeans.

The Five Eyes is an intelligence alliance comprised of Australia, Canada, New Zealand, the United Kingdom and the United States. The continental Europeans were not part of that alliance.

Many in Europe feel that they were misled, lied to, or otherwise betrayed by the government of the U.S.A. So much so, that various Europeans believe this caused irreparable damage to relations with the U.S.A.

Some documents revealed that the U.S. spied on Germany to a similar degree as to the amount of spying it has done on China,²³⁶ which many U.S.A. officials consider to be its biggest threat.²³⁷

The documents leaked by Edward Snowden showed that the U.S.A. only listed the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic nations as its “close friends”:

According to an NSA document dated September 2010, only a few countries labeled as close friends by the U.S. are explicitly exempted from monitoring – Britain, Australia, Canada and New Zealand.²³⁸

NSA is the National Security Agency of the United States.

The German publication *Der Spiegel* reported that the U.S. considered Germany to be a ‘third rate partner’ in at least one of the leaked documents.²³⁹ It was reported in 2014, that the Obama-Biden Administration may have succeeded in “helping to convert it {Germany} from an ally into an adversary.”²⁴⁰ Germany will become an adversary according to Isaiah 10:5-11 and the Obama-Biden Administration contributed to that.

The election of Donald Trump also caused alarms in Europe as did the British exit (Brexit) vote from the European Union.

These, and other related matters, outraged the Germans and many other continental Europeans. So, also did the disparaging comments about the European Union from then U.S. Assistant Secretary of State Victoria Nuland in 2014.²⁴¹

Despite the fact that the Europeans were insulted by Victoria Nuland, in 2021 she became as undersecretary of state for political affairs, effectively the third-ranking U.S. diplomat in the Biden-Harris Administration.²⁴² That did not please the Europeans.

Neither did the USA pullout from Afghanistan in 2021 nor the AUKUS (Australia, United Kingdom, and United States) alliance of 2021 please the Europeans.

Furthermore, notice also the following:

Europe Won't Get Any Relief on Trade From Biden

... a President Biden would do as little as possible on trade. But the world will not stand still. ... Europe would be ... challenging.²⁴³

Notice also:

Top European officials are furious with Joe Biden's administration and now accuse the Americans of making a fortune from the war, while EU countries suffer.

"The fact is, if you look at it soberly, the country that is most profiting from this war is the U.S. because they are selling more gas and at higher prices, and because they are selling more weapons," one senior official ... The U.S. rejected Europe's complaints. ...

"The Inflation Reduction Act has changed everything," one EU diplomat said. "Is Washington still our ally or not?" ²⁴⁴

From fossil fuel prices, to raising interest rates, to subsidizing 'green energy,' the USA has upset Europe on trade issues in 2022.

That said, we would expect trade negotiations with Europe to continue and some type of agreements will happen. In the spirit of accommodation and personal interest, many of the "standards" of the European Union will be adopted by the U.S.A., as well as by nearly all of the countries of the world. The Arab nations will most likely agree with many of the standards as they seem to be destined to form a brief end-time alliance with the Europeans.

Yet, misunderstandings and differences of opinion will occur.

Trade wars and/or serious trade disputes will arise. Some have already started.²⁴⁵

It is likely that trade issues will be a factor in Europe ultimately turning against the U.S.A.

Donald Trump Has Had an Impact

Many in Europe were offended by Donald Trump and his comments, even prior to his election. ²⁴⁶ Even back in late 2015, Karl-Theodor zu Guttenberg, former German Defense Minister, called Donald Trump “that blonde lunatic named Donald.”²⁴⁷

Donald Trump berated Europe, in particular, for trade issues and currency valuation.²⁴⁸

He pulled the U.S.A. out of the Paris climate accords and the Iranian nuclear deal, both of which were backed by the European Union.

Donald Trump also upset many in Europe by calling NATO “obsolete.” ²⁴⁹

Furthermore, he called out many European countries for not paying enough on the military in relationship to NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization). He also threatened to NOT defend NATO nations that would not spend more on their militaries.²⁵⁰

While many in the Trump-Pence Administration thought that the Europeans would have no choice but to cater to their demands, the Europeans moved in a way many did not expect. Less than one year after the Trump-Pence Administration began, 25 European countries formed a pan-European military alliance called the Permanent Structured Cooperation (PESCO). ²⁵¹

The Europeans are concerned about Donald Trump perhaps again becoming U.S.A. president²⁵²—and the prospect of another Trump presidency is pushing them to be more independent of the U.S.A.

While some have resisted it, there have been more and more calls for Europe to develop its own military force that will not have to defer to the U.S.A.²⁵³

Furthermore, shortly after Russia’s “special military operation” into Ukraine began in 2022, Germany announced it was increasing its military spending to levels that Donald Trump had pushed for.²⁵⁴

Europe already has its own space agency, satellite system, and many other military components.

For decades, Washington has pushed the Europeans to spend more on their militaries. The U.S.A. needs to be careful about what it has been asking for. Although it is true that the U.S.A. contributes a vastly disproportionate share to NATO, the more the Europeans themselves spend, the more independent they will be about their spending and military priorities.

Since the Bible says that Europe will have a “great army” (Daniel 11:25), we know Europe will end up with a great army. It will also end up with a substantial navy as the Bible says it will have “many ships” (Daniel 11:40). Europe is prophesied to be an amazingly marvelous military power that will surprise the world (Revelation 13:3-4).

This will not end well for the U.S.A. or the other Israelitish nations.

Europe to Rise Up

Germans and others see the U.S.A. declining. Europe will go in a direction that U.S.A. leaders, including its 'foreign policy experts,' do not comprehend (Daniel 11:39; Isaiah 10:5-11).

Notice something that was claimed by the German Press after Donald Trump's first presidential election:

For 100 years, the United States was the leader of the free world. ... It is time for Europe ... to step into the void. ... Europe's turn.²⁵⁵

Europe wants to rise up. And also militarily:

Germany's respected Frankfurter Allgemeine Zeitung newspaper, meanwhile, even contemplated the "unthinkable" in an editorial: a German bomb.²⁵⁶

While European leaders have begun to publicly challenge reliance on the U.S.A., biblically, the time will once again come when Europe cannot be trusted militarily (Isaiah 10:5-11; Daniel 11:21-39; Lamentations 1:2).

The U.S.A., itself, has repeatedly shown the Europeans that it does not trust them, yet scripture suggests it sometimes will trust them too much. According to the Bible, the time will come when the U.S.A. will find that continental Europe will be an enemy (cf. Isaiah 10:5-11) and not an ally (Ezekiel 23:4,9-10). The Bible warns:

² All her friends have dealt treacherously with her;
They have become her enemies. (Lamentations 1:2)

Europe will cooperate with the U.S.A. as long as it feels the relationship is beneficial, and then (as prophecy foretells) one day turn totally against the U.S.A.

The Bible is clear that there will be problems in Europe (Daniel 2:41-43), yet it also shows that Europe will undergo several reorganizations (Revelation chapters 16-18), and the two reorganizations in Revelation 17:12-13 specifically will not turn out well for the U.S.A. (cf. Daniel 11:39), the Arab world (cf. Daniel 11:40-43), nor ultimately Europe (cf. Jeremiah 50:41-46, 51:27-32; Daniel 11:44-45; Joel 2:2-6).

GPS and Galileo

The U.S.A. has military issues that many do not realize.

Back in 2009, despite denials from the U.S. Air Force,²⁵⁷ I warned that the U.S.A. was likely to have problems with its Global Positioning System (GPS) and may need to rely on Europe's future Galileo system for some of its military needs.²⁵⁸

My warnings were based upon my biblical understandings (e.g. Isaiah 10:5-11; Daniel 11:39; Revelation 13:4; 2 Peter 3:8-12) as well as my previous military experience. I knew full well that military spokespersons did not always tell the full truth.

In late 2009, Air Force General Kevin Chilton publicly confirmed my then published view that the U.S.A. did NOT have enough satellites for military purposes.²⁵⁹

At the same time, Europe's Galileo satellite system was in process. In March 2002, the European Directorate-General Energy and Transport produced an 'information note' which stated:

Galileo will underpin the common European defence policy that the Member States have decided to establish. **There is no question here of coming into conflict with the United States which is and will**

remain our ally, but simply a question of putting an end to a situation of dependence. If the EU finds it necessary to undertake a security mission that the US does not consider to be in its interest, it will be impotent unless it has the satellite navigation technology that is now indispensable. Although designed primarily for civilian applications, Galileo will also give the EU a military capability.²⁶⁰

Some in Europe have long wanted to be independent of the U.S.A.

It should also be understood that there were “early objections from the Americans who thought a rival system to GPS might be used to attack its armed forces.”²⁶¹ Former U.S. Deputy Secretary of Defense, Paul Wolfowitz also wrote to a European leader raising objections to it back in 2001.²⁶²

Yet the later Obama-Biden Administration did not object, but instead encouraged the Europeans to develop it.²⁶³

Then in late July 2010, it was announced that the U.S.A. would rely on Europe’s Galileo system for part of its own military defense.²⁶⁴ This is biblically very dangerous (cf. Lamentations 1:1-2; Daniel 11:39).

Could Europeans have the ability to know where people are? Well, since most cellphones now have ‘GPS,’ those with them in the U.S.A. also face the very real possibility that Europeans will be able to track where they are as well as to control other aspects of cellphones. Yet, relatively few in the U.S.A. realize this. Europe has military intentions in space (**bolding added**):

EU Commissioner Thierry Breton said ... “Space is indeed a much coveted area in which the European Union must guarantee its essential interests. And our

space technologies have become strategic capabilities for our citizens, for the resilience of our economies **and of course for our armies.**" ²⁶⁵

By the time all of Galileo and various systems (like Iris and subsystems) are fully implemented it may be too late for the U.S.A. to get enough of its own satellites up sufficiently independent of Europe to change this.

Because of the Snowden leaks, the Obama-Biden Administration pledged to share U.S.A. data collection espionage techniques with the Europeans,²⁶⁶ and it would not seem that a Biden-Harris Administration will stop all of that.

The United Kingdom had been involved in the development of Galileo. Yet because of Brexit, the E.U. took a stance to block the U.K. from so much of it, that the U.K. is no longer part of that project.²⁶⁷

Notice also:

No single system is a perfect backup for GPS, said the report. Some systems such as Europe's Galileo are similar to GPS and could be a suitable substitute. ...GPS 3 satellites are built by Lockheed Martin under a 2008 contract from the U.S. Air Force. ... Five GPS 3 satellites have been launched since 2018. The remaining five are projected to go to space from 2022 through 2024. ... GPS 3F. The Space Force already has ordered the first four. The first GPS 3F is projected to launch in 2026.²⁶⁸

Having the U.S.A. dependent upon Europe's satellite systems for any part of its military defense communications is dangerous. Satellite technology appears to give the Europeans a unique offensive and defensive capability,

which one day look to be for use against the U.S.A. (cf. Daniel 11:39; Revelation 13:3-4).

It is dangerous to have a potential enemy control portions of one's military communications systems. But the U.S.A. has allowed that to happen.

Germanic Peoples

Some may wonder where the Germanic peoples in Europe came from.

Let's first look at information related to the sons of Noah's son Shem:

²¹ And children were born also to Shem, the father of all the children of Eber, the brother of Japheth the elder. ²² The sons of Shem were Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram. (Genesis 10:21-22).

So, one of Shem's sons was named Asshur.

The first century Jewish historian Josephus tied this son Asshur/Ashur in with Assyria:

Shem, the third son of Noah, had five sons, who inhabited the land that began at the Euphrates, and reached to the Indian Ocean. Elam left behind him the Elamites, the ancestors of the Persians. Ashur lived in Ninevah; and named his descendants Assyrians, who became the most fortunate nation, beyond others.²⁶⁹

Similarly, we see the following from the late fourth/early fifth century Roman Catholic doctor and saint Augustine

Assur, father of the Assyrian ... Of these nations the names have partly survived, so that at this day we can

see from whom they have sprung, as the Assyrians from Assur ...²⁷⁰

The term Assyria has long been considered to be a derivative term for descendant of Assur/Ashur/Asshur, grandson of Noah. Some Assyrian kings were named a version of Ashur.²⁷¹ The ancient Assyrian homeland was in the Near East.²⁷²

While some called Assyrians are now in the Middle East, there is a 21st century report that concluded that certain modern ancestors of the Germans came from the Near East:

A study of remains from Central Europe suggests the foundations of the modern gene pool were laid down between 4,000 and 2,000 BC - in Neolithic times ... a wave of migration by Near Eastern farmers ...

“We have established that the genetic foundations for modern Europe were only established in the Mid-Neolithic, after this major genetic transition around 4000 years ago,” said co-author Dr Wolfgang Haak.²⁷³

People coming from the Near East is consistent with Assyrian migrations from that area – some would have been later than 2000 B.C. And there are also various facts and legends about the Assyrians.

Probably one of the more famous early Assyrian kings was Sargon. Interestingly, a later eighth century B.C. Assyrian king named Sargon II ascribed his success to a god named Asshur:

Sargon and his successors continued the worship of Merodach. Sargon constantly ascribed his power to the united favor of Asshur and Merodach, and Esar-

haddon sculptured the emblems of these two gods over the images of foreign gods.²⁷⁴

Various records of history show that the Assyrians claimed ties to Asshur. He is apparently originated from the one in Genesis 10. Sargon II's son was Sennacherib, who invaded and took the fortified cities of Judah as discussed in Isaiah 36:1-2:

¹ Now it came to pass in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah that Sennacherib king of Assyria came up against all the fortified cities of Judah and took them.

² Then the king of Assyria sent the Rabshakeh with a great army from Lachish to King Hezekiah at Jerusalem. And he stood by the aqueduct from the upper pool, on the highway to the Fuller's Field. (Isaiah 36:1-2)

Smith's Bible Dictionary states:

Assyria, Asshur ... The civilization of the Assyrians was derived originally from the Babylonians. They were a Shemetic race, originally resident in Babylonia (which at that time was Cushite) and thus acquainted with Babylonian inventions and discoveries ... But they were still in the most important points barbarians. Their government was rude and artificial, their religion coarse and sensual, and their conduct in war cruel.²⁷⁵

Also notice:

Ishtar was a favorite goddess of the Assyrian kings, who styled her as "their lady," and sometimes coupled her with Asshur, "the Great Lord," in their invocations. Ishtar had a very old temple at Asshur, the primitive Assyrian capital, and this temple,

Tiglath-Pileser I, repaired and beautified. (Clare, p. 225).

Ishtar, also known as Easter/Oster/Ostern (the Germanic goddess of Springtime), long influenced the Assyrians and as well the modern Germans. Ishtar was the goddess of fertility and war. Ishtar also has ties to the ancient Babylonian mystery religion and Nimrod. She was also called Beltis. Beltis was the wife of Bel-Nimrod. She was called “the Queen of Fertility” and also known as “the Great Mother” (similar to how some revere Mary, the mother of Jesus today) and essentially was also Ishtar in the Assyrian triad.²⁷⁶

The Roman Catholic saint Jerome (late fourth/early fifth century) seems to have indicated that the descendants of the biblical Asshur (Genesis 10:22) which seems to be Assyria,²⁷⁷ ended up in parts of Europe, like Germany:

He that lets is taken out of the way, and yet we do not realize that Antichrist is near. Yes, Antichrist is near ... The whole country between the Alps and the Pyrenees, between the Rhine and the Ocean, has been laid waste by hordes ... *For Assur also is joined with them.*²⁷⁸

The late scholar and evangelist Dr. Herman Hoeh wrote the following:

Ninus (his Bible name was Nimrod), according to Genesis 10, led the ancient Assyrians from Babylon and supervised their building of Nineveh, the capital of ancient Assyria ... From there the Assyrians began their conquest of the ancient world. They, too, called themselves “the Master Race.” But why do the German records speak of the son of an ASSYRIAN

King as the builder of their first city? What connection have the German tribes WITH THE ASSYRIANS of history?

Jerome, who lived at the time when the Indo-Germanic tribes were invading Europe, gives the answer: "For 'Assur (the Assyrian) also is joined with them'"! ...

Jerome said ... he ... was an EYEWITNESS to their migrations from Mesopotamia and the shores of the Black and Caspian seas!

Only 300 years before Jerome, the Roman naturalist Pliny the Elder declared the "Assyriani" — the Assyrians — were dwelling north of the Black Sea ("Natural History", IV, § 12, page 183). But the Assyrians did not remain there! They are not there today! Of course not — they migrated into Central Europe — where the Germans live today!²⁷⁹

Various other scholars have noted similarities between ancient Assyria and modern Germany:

Assyria is interesting on account of the close parallel between her methods and morals and those of modern Germany. In politics, Germany has been an imitator of Assyria.²⁸⁰

Similarities between Assyria and Germany have been noted by several.²⁸¹

Some others, like George Spiteri, also called modern Assyria Germany,²⁸² but without going into much detail as to why.

A 21st century work that goes into the a lot of detail about the similarities on this was published by Craig White and is

titled *The Great German Nation: Origins and Destiny*. His book looks at ancient records and practices of the Assyrians, including certain archaeological records, to demonstrate his reasoning why Germans are, in the main, basically descended from ancient Assyrians. He also wrote that Assyria in prophecy also includes the Prussian east/Assurhim descendants of Keturah and the Aramaeans in the northwest.

In the first century A.D., Pliny reportedly claimed that the Assyrians were north of the Black Sea.²⁸³

Basically, Pliny's account seems to support the idea of the bulk of the Assyrians ending up in Middle Europe. Similarly, one of the oldest traditions of the Bavarians claim that they came to Central Europe by way of the Black Sea.²⁸⁴

There is also a very old legend that claims that the city of Trier in Germany was founded by an Assyrian leader:

For legend, going history better by more than 2000 years, ascribes the founding' of Trier to Assyrian Prince Trebeta, who gave it his name, in 2053 BC.²⁸⁵

Hence, the idea that at least some of the Germans have Assyrian heritage has long been held and is not a new one.

Secular scholars have tended to minimize connections between the Assyrians and Germans, such as the old city of Trier, the writing of 1605 that Dr. Hoeh referred to, and other information.

It is not that many of the relevant scholars do not know about Trier and certain aspects of the Assyrian-German connection, it is basically that they consider these records of history as questionable myths/legends which do not tend to fit their preferred views on the origins of the Germanic

peoples. Yet many supposedly “scholarly” theories that I have seen of Germanic ancestry have no real proof of where the German peoples originate from much prior to the time of Christ and the Roman Empire.

Basically, mainstream scholars tend to simply believe that somehow people from Asia (including those just north of the Black Sea) ended up in northern and central Europe through migration, but without being clear as to from whom they originally descended from. In one sense that is understandable, given that they do not have a biblical basis for their theories. Those who truly accept scripture realize everyone had to have descended from someone listed in Genesis chapter 10 of the Bible. Furthermore, the connections of the Germanic peoples having Asshur as at least one of their progenitors has at least similar historical support than the non-biblical theories for the related time period. It is not unscientific to accept the connections.

That said, the Bible has several end time prophecies involving those it calls the Assyrians. They are prophesied to rise up militarily, but later be correctively punished (e.g. Isaiah 10:5-16, 26-27).

Consider also the following from Dr. Hoeh:

Germany has set itself up as the bulwark of European civilization for well over a thousand years. Germany for centuries has claimed to stand as the eastern wall of defense against the barbarism of Asia. It was on German soil that the hordes of Asia, sweeping across eastern Europe, were more than once stopped.

The German Reich long endured as the oldest political institution in Europe — older than the government of France or England by centuries. The

German people called their Reich the Holy Roman Empire. It bore rule over Europe for a thousand years. This “Holy Roman Empire of the German People” was officially designated by the Church in the Middle Ages as “The Kingdom of God” on earth. Its citizens, the Germans, felt themselves true Romans and bearers of the Christian Reich or Kingdom. THEY were therefore the CHOSEN PEOPLE of the Christian era,²⁸⁶

Thus, even without looking at migratory connections, there are reasons to consider that the Germanic peoples in Europe will fulfill the prophesied end time roles of those scripture calls Assyrians.

Aspects of the so-called ‘Holy Roman Empire’ look to be referred to in the Book of Revelation with a final revival of a power long considered dead to rise again. Notice just one verse:

³ And I saw one of his heads as if it had been mortally wounded, and his deadly wound was healed. And all the world marveled and followed the beast. (Revelation 13:3).

While much of the world will be surprised, those who believe and understand the Bible here will not need to be. The ‘Holy Roman Empire’ was dominated by Gentiles, but also included some on the European continent with Israelite heritage. Though many believe it is dead and gone, a more powerful version of that empire will arise again.

A revival of the ‘Holy Roman Empire’ is also taught in Roman Catholic prophecies.²⁸⁷

The Slavic Peoples

Slavic peoples tended to descend through those called Sarmatians,²⁸⁸ which look to have descended from the biblical Elam and Madai.²⁸⁹

The Slavic nations are in lands south and east of the Benelux nations—so consistent with Daniel 8:9, many in Slavic Europe will support the end time European power.

Furthermore, back in WWII, Hungary, Romania, Bulgaria, Slovakia, and Croatia were part of the Axis powers aligned with Germany.

Poland was taken over by Germany early in that war and was basically an occupied nation—so, some Poles fought against Germany. Currently, Poland is considered to have one of the largest and best trained ground armies in Europe.²⁹⁰

The Czech Republic was forcibly annexed by Germany in WWII. Slovenia was also annexed by Axis powers.

Though Slavic, historically, Serbia has differed from most others in eastern Europe.

Unlike many eastern Europeans who supported Germany in WWI and WWII, the Serbs (which mainly live in Serbia, and Montenegro) were opposed and supported the Allied forces. The Serbs also worked with Russia in WWII against Hitler's forces. Serbia is considered significantly stronger militarily than many countries with similar populations.²⁹¹

The Bible tells of a son of Shem named Elam (Genesis 10:22). History shows that there were also numerous tribes of Elamites.²⁹²

Yet researchers have concluded:

Any attempt to trace the Elamites ethnologically is beset with difficulties.²⁹³

That being said, some Elamites are believed to have been the progenitors of the Serbs,²⁹⁴ but some part of the Medes (from Madai) may also have been involved.

According to Herodotus, there were numerous tribes of the Medes.²⁹⁵ And originally, this was a reference to a geographic region, and not ethnicity²⁹⁶ which included areas that the Elamites were believed to have lived in.

Pliny the Younger in his work *Plinii Caecilii Secundi Historia naturalis* from the first century AD (69-75) mentioned people named Serboi, who lived near the Cimmerians, presumably on the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.

[In the 2nd century (around 175 AD), the Egyptian Greek scientist Claudius Ptolemy mentioned in his Geography people named Serboi or Sirboi, who presumably lived behind the Caucasus, in the hinterland of the Caspian Sea.]²⁹⁷

It is likely that the Serbs were an Elamite and/or Median tribe. Croatians *may* have come from a different tribe. Some consider that the Serbs and Croatians had the same (or very similar ancestry) but became divided because of culture, geography, and religion: Croatians being more Roman Catholic and Serbs more Russian Orthodox.

Additionally, Croatia was part of the old 'Holy Roman Empire,' but Serbia was not.

Historically, the Croatians have been more supportive of Germany than Russia. It is likely that they will remain that way. Serbia has tended to back Russia more than Croatia.

Even though Serbia looks to be a nation that will support Europe for a time, it appears likely that Serbia will be part of the force that will back Russia against end time Babylon, (Ezekiel 32:24-28; Jeremiah 51:11, 27-32).

Russia and the Medes

Russia, Ukraine, and Belarus tend to be considered as East Slavs. They tend to be descended from Japheth's sons Madai, Tubal, Mechech, and Gomer (Genesis 10:2).

All of which have descendants in Russia. Belarus seems to have mainly descended from Madai (or possibly Midian).

There were numerous tribes of the Medes (which descended from Madai) with the Buzhians in the northwest part of Ukraine.²⁹⁸

Russia, which is both in Europe and Asia, will, for a time, prosper through trade with the coming European Beast (as will Belarus, Moldova, and Ukraine).

Prophecies related to the Medes and Russia are mentioned later in this book.

The Baltics

At least some of those of the Baltic states of Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania are believed to have descended through Abraham's second wife, Keturah (Genesis 25:1-4).

Specifically, those of Latvia and Lithuania reportedly descending from Letushim (Genesis 25:3) and Leummim (Genesis 25:3) for Estonia (and perhaps some of the Finns); with some of Estonia reportedly descending through a non-Abrahamitic line through Riphath (Genesis 10:3).²⁹⁹

The Baltic region has been fought over and dominated by Russia or Germany for much of the past couple of centuries. The Baltics are currently part of the European Union and are expected to align with the coming European Beast power, though some may turn against it.

Italy, Macedonia, and Greece

The Greeks appear to have descended from Javan (Genesis 10:2), with the Macedonians also descending from Elam (Genesis 10:22).

The Italians are from Javan and Canaan (Genesis 10:6), although those in the north have been claimed to have descended from Chesed (Genesis 22:21-22).

Italy, Macedonia, and Greece were once part of the ancient Roman empire. Italy and Greece are currently in the European Union and North Macedonia has applied to be.

All of them are expected to support the final Beast power. They will have the temporal financial benefits as well as the plagues (Revelation chapters 15 & 16) and destruction (e.g. Revelation chapter 18; Jeremiah 50:41-46) that will affect the coming European Beast superstate.

Albania and Kosovo

Albanians seem to have derived from Lud (Genesis 10:22) or Canaan (Genesis 10:6).

Albania has applied to be part of the European Union. Despite an Islamic population majority, Albania looks likely to support the coming European Beast superstate. Albania's currency, called the Lek, is pegged at a fixed rate to the euro.

Though some Kosovars descended from Elam (Genesis 10:22) as many Serbs live there, Kosovo also has an Islamic population majority of people of Albanian heritage.

Before the formal introduction of the euro, which Kosovo now uses, many Kosovars used Germany's Deutsche Mark as their currency.

Kosovo is recognized by the European Union as a potential candidate for accession and looks likely to support the coming European Beast superstate.

What About Spain and Portugal?

One European nation that essentially became a multitude of nations is Spain. Most nations in Central and South America are Spanish (though mixed with earlier peoples).

Portugal is a nation that ended up with a "great nation," Brazil, which is larger than any Spanish-speaking nation.

Spain and Portugal are culturally brothers, so what about them representing the sons of Joseph? Could they be representing Ephraim and Manasseh respectively?

Look at the prophetic blessings to Joseph:

¹⁴ With the precious fruits of the sun, With the precious produce of the months, ¹⁵ With the best things of the ancient mountains, With the precious things of the everlasting hills, ¹⁶ With the precious

things of the earth and its fullness, And the favor of Him who dwelt in the bush. Let the blessing come 'on the head of Joseph, (Deuteronomy 33:14-15)

The British empire was the largest land empire in human history and the United States of America became the wealthiest nation in human history. They, better than Spain and Portugal, fulfilled the promises of those blessings.

Furthermore, the Spanish monarchy either started with the collapse of the ancient Roman Empire, or as most sources point to, with King Pelayo in 717.³⁰⁰ Either way, we do not have a record of royal succession from near the time of King Zedekiah (6th century BCE), hence Spain would not appear to represent Ephraim/Israel.

Then there are migration and linguistic matters that also point towards British-American Israelism. Furthermore, while Brazil has become a great nation, it never attained anything close to the level attained by the U.S.A.

The Portuguese appear to have descended from Javan (Genesis 10:2) and Canaan (Genesis 10:6). The same is basically true for Spain, although those in the north have been claimed to have descended from Aram (Genesis 10:22) and Chesed (Genesis 22:21-22).

As far as Spain and Portugal go prophetically, since they are in Europe, they are expected to support the rise of a leader there that will make Europe the dominant power in the world. They will share in the economic benefits as well as the frightening end of that power (cf. Revelation 18; Isaiah 13:1, 17-19; Jeremiah 50:41-46, 51:27-32; Joel 2:2-6).

The European Beast

A political-religious power will arise in Europe. This will be led by the Beast of the Sea and his henchman, the Antichrist (also known as the two-horned Beast and False Prophet). It will enforce the “mark of the beast” and God’s word shows that those who take that mark will suffer “the wrath of God” (Revelation 14:9-11).

Revelation 13:2,4 reveals that Satan will give this religious-political combine its power, and seat, and great authority. However, that does not mean that the millions of people who will be within it are in themselves any more evil than the rest of humanity in this world (cf. Luke 13:1-5). THIS WHOLE WORLD—all nations— has been DECEIVED by Satan (Revelation 12:9).

A deceived person may be sincere, thinking he/she is right. Those deceived—all but the very minimal “elect”—are simply natural- or carnal-minded—and the natural mind is hostile against God, and not subject to the LAW of God, neither indeed can be (Romans 8:7). The Bible points out that the “heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked” (Jeremiah 17:9). THAT DESCRIBES ALL OF US, as those who are true Christians were prior to true conversion!

The Bible is clear that all those without “the love of the truth” will be deceived (2 Thessalonians 2:9-11).

The Bible further warns Christians to not be part of the coming end time Babylon that will arise in Europe:

² ... Babylon ⁴ ... Come out of her, my people, lest you share in her sins, and lest you receive of her plagues.

⁵ For her sins have reached to heaven, and God has remembered her iniquities. (Revelation 18:2,4-5)

Plagues from God will be coming. Likely within one decade.

And yes, they will affect the peoples of Europe.

The coming prosperity and military conquests by Europe will lull many into a false complacency according to your Bible. Europe's sins will stop being tolerated.

6. Asia, Africa, South America, and the Islands

What about other non-Israelitish nations?

The Bible discusses many lands.

As far as salvation goes, the Bible teaches:

²⁹ They will come from the east and the west, from the north and the south, and sit down in the kingdom of God. ³⁰ And indeed there are last who will be first, and there are first who will be last. (Luke 13:29-30)

⁹ After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude which no one could number, of all nations, tribes, peoples, and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, with palm branches in their hands, ¹⁰ and crying out with a loud voice, saying, "Salvation belongs to our God who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb!" (Revelation 7:9-10)

So, people of all races, ethnic backgrounds, and languages are going to be saved. Whether Gentile or Israelites. For more information on that, please see our free documented book, online at ccog.org, titled *Universal Offer of Salvation*. The statement regarding some of the last being first and the first being last suggests that many Gentiles will have higher roles in the coming Kingdom of God than many Israelites.

The Middle East and North Africa

Because of their ties to Abraham, let's start by considering the Arabic peoples, which are Gentiles.

Arabic peoples dominate the Middle East and North Africa. Here is something Keith Stump wrote about their biblical ties:

In general, the Arab peoples are descended from one man — Ishmael (called Ismail by Arabs), the son of the biblical patriarch Abraham (or Ibrahim). The Arabs themselves acknowledge this. ...

From Ishmael's son Kedar (Qaidar in Arabic) — dated approximately 1840 B.C. — can be traced a line of descent to Adnan (or Qais) — 122 B.C. — and from him (21 generations further on) to Mohammed (A.D. 570-632) of the Koreish tribe, the founder and prophet of the Islamic faith. ...

Joktan (called Qahtan or Kahtan by the Arabs) was the son of the patriarch Eber (Genesis 10:25), who lived many generations before Abraham and Ishmael. This Joktan whom authorities consider to have been the ultimate father of all southern Arabs — had 13 sons, named in Genesis 10:26-29. One of them, Jerah (Yarab to the Arabs), is believed to have founded the kingdom of Yemen in the southern part of the Arabian Peninsula. Some authorities believe his name was the origin of the word "Arab," the meaning of which is thought to be "arid."

Yarab's brother Hadoram (Jorham to the Arabs) is believed to have founded the Hejaz, an important kingdom along the western coast of Arabia, containing the cities of Mecca and Medina. According to Arab history, the daughter of Mudad, a descendant of this Jorham, became one of the wives of Ishmael. It

is from that union that Ishmael's illustrious son Kedar is said to have come.

Another of Joktan's sons, Hazarmaveth, is claimed by the present-day tribesmen of the Hadhramaut (a region in the southern part of the Arabian Peninsula) as their ancestor.

The other line with which the Ishmaelites are said to have intermarried is that of the Keturahites. The Keturahites were descendants of Keturah, whom Abraham married after the death of Sarah. Abraham and Keturah had six sons (Genesis 25:2), whose progeny, like that of Joktan, gradually became incorporated into the house of Ishmael.

Thus, after making due allowance for mixture with Joktanites and Keturahites, the Arabs may be regarded as essentially an Ishmaelite race.³⁰¹

That said, for a long time, Washington has wanted a coalition of Arab nations in the Middle East and North Africa to help deal with terrorism and other matters.³⁰²

There have also been calls in the Middle East for an Arab or Middle East 'NATO.'³⁰³

Will there be a militaristic confederation of nations in the Middle East and North Africa?

Yes.

This is clear in several passages of scripture (e.g. Ezekiel 30:1-9; Daniel 11:40-43; Psalm 83:5-7).

An alliance of these Gentile peoples is mentioned in Psalm 83--and this takes place prior to the time of the Great Tribulation.

Here is part of Psalm 83, starting with verse 3, with some national identities inserted using “[]” by Keith Stump:

³ They have taken crafty counsel against Your people,
And consulted together against Your sheltered ones.
(Psalms 83:3)

“They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation; that the name of Israel may be no more in remembrance. For they have consulted together with one consent: they are confederate against thee: The tabernacles of Edom [Esau or modern-day Turkey, a non-Arab but Islamic nation] and the Ishmaelites [Saudi Arabia]; of Moab [part of Jordan] and the Hagarenes [anciently these people dwelt in the land known as Syria today]; Gebal [Lebanon], and Ammon [modern Jordan], and Amalek [part of the Turks]; the Philistines [the modern Palestinian Arabs] with the inhabitants of Tyre [Lebanon {perhaps also in part of Southern Italy}]; Assur [whose descendants, the Assyrians, migrated to Germany] also is joined with them: they have holpen [helped] the children of Lot [Jordan and western Iraq]” (Psalms 83:4-8).³⁰⁴

Verse three discusses this confederation will have “taken crafty counsel,” which suggests that the plan may include what could be considered as terrorism by some of the participants or supporters of the participants, as well as secrecy involving a planned attack. This deal will happen shortly before the start of what could be called WWIII. Terrorism looks like it will be employed.

More on what will happen afterwards to those in that confederation is discussed later in this book.

Iran and Syria

Iranians are Persians and not Arabs. Here is something about their ancestors:

Iranians ... are a mixed people of the remnants of Media and Elam and other ancestors of Semitic and Hamitic stock.³⁰⁵

Iran's closest ally is Syria. While some Arab nations have made peace with Israel, Iran and Syria have not.

Furthermore, in January 2021, it was reported, "Iranian lawmakers have submitted a bill seeking the government by law to commit to Israel's destruction by the year 2040, Iranian state media ISNA reported."³⁰⁶

The Bible points to Iran and its ally Syria causing damage to Jerusalem of the nation of Israel:

⁵ For it is a day of trouble and treading down and perplexity By the Lord God of hosts In the Valley of Vision — Breaking down the walls And of crying to the mountain.

⁶ **Elam bore the quiver With chariots of men and horsemen,** And Kir uncovered the shield. ⁷ It shall come to pass that your choicest valleys Shall be full of chariots, And the horsemen shall set themselves in array at the gate.

⁸ **He removed the protection of Judah.** You looked in that day to the armor of the House of the Forest; ⁹ **You also saw the damage to the city of David, That it was**

great; And you gathered together the waters of the lower pool. ¹⁰ You numbered the houses of Jerusalem, And the houses you broke down To fortify the wall.

¹¹ You also made a reservoir between the two walls For the water of the old pool. But you did not look to its Maker, Nor did you have respect for Him who fashioned it long ago. ¹² And in that day the Lord God of hosts Called for weeping and for mourning, For baldness and for girding with sackcloth. (Isaiah 22:5-12)

The Bible tells that after Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria took over Damascus, he moved Syrians to Kir (2 Kings 16:9-10). While this does not mean that Kir must (or must only) be a reference to Syria, the fact that Syria is an ally of Iran is interesting. God's word has the expression "the Syrians from Kir" (Amos 9:7), which is basically confirmation that Kir of Isaiah 22 would include Syrians. The Bible also tells of a time when Kir will be destroyed (Isaiah 15:1b) and also says that Syria's capital Damascus will be destroyed (Isaiah 17:1). The prophecy that "Kir uncovered the shield" suggests that Syria will have somehow reduced the effectiveness of Israel's 'Iron Dome' and/or other defensive equipment.

In Isaiah 22:8, "Judah" is a reference to those in the land commonly called Israel—and the Bible shows that God will allow Israel to be attacked! In Isaiah 22:9, consider that "the damage to the city of David" is a reference to at least part of Jerusalem (cf. 2 Kings 9:28).

Further notice that Isaiah's prophecy states that the damage will be great. Also notice part of the reason will be because Judah (modern nation of Israel) would "not look to its Maker," nor "have respect for Him," that God will allow this. Just relying on Israel's own military will not be enough.

It appears there may be a regional war involving Israel, who has threatened to take preemptive attacks to prevent Iran from acquiring nuclear weapons.³⁰⁷

Despite its posturing, relative military strength, and ability to damage Israel and others, Iran will be somehow effectively neutralized (cf. Ezekiel 32:24). This could perhaps be from an attack involving Israel and other nations and/or internal civil unrest -- this could also include electromagnetic (EMP) or similar weapons used against Iran (Jeremiah 49:34-39).

Iran has weapons that can cause damage, including terror -- which is associated with Elam in Ezekiel 32:24. Furthermore, the U.S.A. itself, as well as the State of Israel, are vulnerable to EMP type attacks and even items such as biological weapons, chemical weapons, terrorism, nuclear weapons, dirty bombs, etc. because of a conflict involving Iran, Syria, and/or others.

But should this attack occur, this would NOT be the final destruction of the U.S.A. Prophetically, Iran would not end up faring well (cf. Ezekiel 32:24-25).

Because of prophecies related to the destruction of Syria's capital Damascus (Isaiah 17:1), damage to Iran from multiple nations (Jeremiah 49:34-39), and great damage to be done to Jerusalem (Isaiah 22:8-9), one or more of those events may well precede the 'peace deal' of Daniel 9:27.

Notice something else involving Syrians:

⁸ The Lord sent a word against Jacob, And it has fallen on Israel. ⁹ All the people will know -- Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria -- ... ¹¹ Therefore the Lord shall set up The adversaries of Rezin against him, And spur his enemies on, ¹² The Syrians before and the

Philistines behind; And they shall devour Israel with an open mouth. (Isaiah 9:8-9, 11-12)

In addition to the nation of Israel, the U.S.A. (Samaria) and its British descended allies (Ephraim) will have more terrorist attacks. Syrian and some other refugees are a potential terrorist problem (Jeremiah 15:6-8; Ezekiel 21:12, 32:24) as there will be “terror within” as per Deuteronomy 32:25.

Isaiah and Ezekiel look to be prophesying problems from Syrians, Palestinians, and Iranians. And this would be expected to include terrorism. And this is also consistent with prophecies in Psalm 83.

Islamic Mahdi: The King of the South?

Muslims are looking for a leader who will arise in these end times.

Notice the following from the *New Encyclopedia of Islam*:

The last days, as described in Islam, are marked by the figures of Gog and Magog (Juj wa Jajuj), the Mahdi, the Antichrist (Dajjal), and Jesus ... Gog and Magog, representing the forces of chaos, have been kept at bay ... At the end of time, chaos will break through the wall of Divinely imposed order, and the world will succumb to “outer darkness”. At the same time, it is believed, there will be a countercurrent, or a brief return to the state of spiritual lucidity and primordial integrity that obtained at the dawn of time. This is the reign of the Mahdi, the “rightly guided one”...

The reign of the Mahdi will be followed by that of the Antichrist ... once the Antichrist has led away his

followers, Jesus will then come to destroy the Antichrist in the closing moments of the cosmic drama.

Belief in the Mahdi has been rejected by noted Sunni authorities ...³⁰⁸

The Bible tells of a leader called the King of the South (Daniel 11:40-43) that sounds similar to the Mahdi that various ones in Islam are looking forward to. Even without this Mahdi, 2016 saw the world's largest military exercise (called North Thunder) composed of 20, basically Sunni-Muslim, nations,³⁰⁹ which are consistent with the peoples prophesied to get together later (Daniel 11:40-43).

Some in Islam seem to believe that the reign of the European Beast (Revelation 13:1-10) and Antichrist (Revelation 13:11-17; 1 John 4:1-3) will happen after the Mahdi's death.

Now, biblically, this looks to be true, to a degree, for the Arab lands. However, the Bible shows that the Beast of Revelation (also called the King of the North in Daniel 11) and the final Antichrist (a European-supporting false religious leader) will rule in Europe and over some of the American lands (Daniel 11:39), prior to the European reign over Arab lands (Daniel 11:40-43). Hence, the Bible teaches that the final Antichrist will have power prior to the death of the biblical King of the South.

Although the belief in a "Mahdi" apparently had been a minority Sunni view and has had rejection by some Sunni authorities, "the Muslim World League issued a *fatwa* in October of 1976 commanding Sunni Muslims to believe in the concept of an Islamic Savior called the Mahdi."³¹⁰

It should also be noted that some Sunni groups, like the Muslim Brotherhood want a Caliph to arise and rule an

Islamic caliphate that includes all the territory from north-west Africa through the Middle East and even further east.³¹¹

However, Sunnis (who vastly outnumber the Shi'ite Muslims) should not change their anti-Mahdi views (various Sunni scholars also agree³¹²) or want a Caliph, because of what the Bible shows will happen. Shi'ites also would do well to recognize that just because someone may claim to be the final Imam (or Mahdi), does not mean that God will agree that he should be followed. Neither Sunnis nor Shi'ites should support one who will appear to possibly be the final Imam/Caliph in the next decade or so. A major leader of Islamic lands will apparently make such claims and rise up, but will be defeated soundly (Daniel 11:40-43; Ezekiel 30:2-8).

Jesus and the Koran

Many people do not realize that most Muslims, whether they are Shia or Sunni, expect Jesus (who they tend to call the *son of Mary/Miriam*) to return at the time of judgment. Notice what the Koran (Qur'an) teaches:

043.057

YUSUFALI: When (Jesus) the son of Mary is held up as an example, behold, thy people raise a clamour threat (in ridicule)!

043.061

YUSUFALI: And (Jesus) shall be a Sign (for the coming of) the Hour (of Judgment): therefore have no doubt about the (Hour), but follow ye Me: this is a Straight Way.³¹³

My hope and prayer related to the above is that when Muslims do see Jesus return, they will accept the truth of His coming after He explains who He is.

Islam and the Bible Look for a Peace Deal

In Islam, there are writings that there will be a seven-year peace deal with a Roman Catholic European leader that will be broken:

Rasaullah [Muhammed] said: "There will be four peace agreements between you and the Romans [Christians]. The fourth agreement will be mediated through a person who will be the progeny of Hadrat Haroon [Honorable Aaron -- Moses' brother] and will be upheld for seven years.³¹⁴

General anarchy and bloodshed, that no Arab household will be spared from it Then a life of peace as a result of a peace agreement between you and the Banil Asfaar (Romans) which they will break and attack you with a force consisting of eighty flags and under each flag will be an army of twelve thousand men.³¹⁵

Those writings appear to be consistent with the following biblical prophecy:

²⁶ And the people of the prince who is to come Shall destroy the city and the sanctuary. The end of it shall be with a flood, And till the end of the war desolations are determined. ²⁷ Then he shall confirm a covenant with many for one week; But in the middle of the week He shall bring an end to sacrifice and offering. And on the wing of abominations shall be one who makes desolate, Even until the consummation, which is determined, Is poured out on the desolate. (Daniel 9:26-27)

The above is referring to a deal or covenant that has a time element attached to it. The 'one week' time element has

generally been understood anciently to mean a seven-year deal (e.g. Hippolytus of Rome ³¹⁶), that will be broken in the middle of it (after 3 1/2 years, which is a half a week, also per Irenaeus of Lyon ³¹⁷). The 'with many' would seem to indicate that 'many' nations, as opposed to one or two, are agreeing to something.

The reference to a "prince" is referring to the leader of the developing European empire. One way to show this is to realize that it was the people of the Roman Empire of the 1st century that fulfilled the portion of Daniel 9:26 as they destroyed "the city" (Jerusalem) "and the sanctuary" (the Jewish Temple) in 70 A.D. Because of other biblical passages (Daniel 8:25; 11:23-24) this is generally considered to be a "peace deal" by prophecy watchers.

So, both biblical and Islamic prophecies tell of a time when there is a peace deal between the Europeans and others that will one day be broken.

The confirmation of a seven-year portion of some 'peace' agreement by a relatively powerless "prince" is an event that will set off what could be considered the final clock of many prophesied end-time events. Including the last 3 ½ years of the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies. Since various Protestant and other prophecy watchers are also looking for this deal, it is likely it will not look obvious to most when it is confirmed. But, make no mistake about it, this will be an important prophetic event. Even though many looking for it will not believe it, even when it is told to them (cf. Habakkuk 1:5).

A confirmation of a particular deal with a time element in it by a European 'prince' will set the countdown for the rise of the Beast and the destructive Great Tribulation. However, the way it will be done will seemingly be in a manner that

those that despise biblical prophecy will not accept, even though some will be told (cf. Acts 13:41).

Central Asia and East Asia

Those in Asia look to prosper, for a time, from the coming Babylonian power led by the European King of the North.

Yet, the Bible teaches that “news from the east and the north shall trouble” (Daniel 11:44) the European King of the North. This will be from a confederation led by Russia, and will include others, including peoples from Central and East Asia.

Various peoples in Asia are prophesied to be involved with the Northern power (king of the Medes below):

²⁷ Set up a banner in the land, Blow the trumpet among the nations! Prepare the nations against her, Call the kingdoms together against her: Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz. Appoint a general against her; Cause the horses to come up like the bristling locusts.

²⁸ Prepare against her the nations, With the kings of the Medes, Its governors and all its rulers, All the land of his dominion. ²⁹ And the land will tremble and sorrow; For every purpose of the Lord shall be performed against Babylon, To make the land of Babylon a desolation without inhabitant. (Jeremiah 51:27-29)

“Today the Georgians, Ossettes, Armenians and others occupy the region near Ararat.”³¹⁸ The Minni appear to be an Armenians reference.³¹⁹

Those in the Caucasus as well as the Malays, Mongolians, Burmese, and even some of the Japanese reportedly have

some descent from Ashkenaz.³²⁰ Its geographic reference is in modern Turkey, and Turkey may be involved in this battle on the side of the Medes – which is Russia and at least some in the areas claimed by Ukraine.

The Bible teaches:

¹³ Javan, Tubal, and Meshech were your traders. They bartered human lives and vessels of bronze for your merchandise. ¹⁴ Those from the house of Togarmah traded for your wares with horses, steeds, and mules (Ezekiel 27:13-14).

Togarmah seems to represent Siberia, which is the eastern end of Russia. Russia is a major trader of commodities such as oil and gold. It also exports copper, which is the major component of bronze. Nations like Mongolia, which seems to also have some mixed Togarmah descent,³²¹ would seem to fit prophecies related to trade in horses and steeds, and possibly mules.

Indians and Black Africans

Ethnically Indian countries (like India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, and Sri Lanka) make up around 1/4 of the world's population. It has been written that:

In India the highest castes were not only called Brahmins, but also Rajputs. "Rajput" means "king or chief of Put" (Raja," Encyclopedia Britannica, 11th ed.). "Phut" or "Put" means a "warrior" in Hebrew. The Rajputs are the most noted warriors in India...Of the four sons of Ham, only Cush bears a name that means "black." Just as some of the sons of Cush are brown, so some of the children of Phut are black. The

Indians of central and northern India vary from light to dark brown.³²²

The 1st century Jewish historian Josephus recognized two major branches from the sons of Cush. One found in Africa and the other in Asia.³²³

Those in much of Black Africa were descended from Ham's son Phut along with descendants of Ham's son Cush.³²⁴

Another branch from Put appears to be in the Indian peoples.³²⁵

Through the same male progenitor, Ham, various descendants had wives of different backgrounds.

Information on the prophetic future of the Hamite peoples is found later in this book.

That said, there is claimed to be a 1912 prophecy by Johanwa Owalo, the founder of Kenya's Nomiya Luo Church, about the United States:

So far have they [the United States] strayed into wickedness in those [future] times that their destruction has been sealed by my [father]. Their great cities will burn, their crops and cattle will suffer disease and death, their children will perish from diseases never seen upon this Earth, and I reveal to you the greatest [mystery] of all as I have been allowed to see that their [the United States] destruction will come about through the vengeful hands of one of our very own sons.³²⁶

So, a prophecy claims that the United States will be destroyed because of the hands of a son of Kenya.

Since the father of former U.S. President Barack Obama was from Kenya, he has been “fondly referred to as a son of Kenya.”³²⁷ Some who oppose him see that Barack Obama is still highly active in politics and believe that his team has been effectively running the Biden-Harris Administration³²⁸

That said, some military people from Africa and the Middle East would be expected to gather related to Armageddon as “the whole world” (Revelation 16:13-16) will be involved.

The Chinese

The People’s Republic of China is currently the second most populous nation in the world (India is now first). Lands such as Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macao, and Singapore are mainly Chinese, with lands such as Malaysia and Indonesia containing substantial populations of people who are ethnically Chinese. Additionally, there are people of Chinese ancestry scattered in probably most of the nations of the world.

According to the Tartars and Orientals, the Chinese are descended from Tchin, or Gin, the son of Japheth.³²⁹

The fact that only one of Japheth son’s name (Javan) ended with an “n” and the fact the letter “G” can have a “J” sound suggests Javan is the same one that is called Tchin or Gin.

The old *Plain Truth* magazine pointed to Magog and Javan, who were sons of Japheth, as the fathers of the Chinese.³³⁰

It seems to be that the Han Chinese derived from Javan and/or a mixture of the sons of Japheth.

Irrespective of which son(s) or grandson(s) of Noah the Chinese peoples descended from, the Bible specifically teaches that all peoples were together and of the same language until after the tower of Babel:

¹ Now the whole earth had one language and one speech. .. ⁶ And the Lord said, "Indeed the people are one and they all have one language, and this is what they begin to do; now nothing that they propose to do will be withheld from them. ⁷ Come, let Us go down and there confuse their language, that they may not understand one another's speech." ⁸ So the Lord scattered them abroad from there over the face of all the earth, and they ceased building the city. ⁹ Therefore its name is called Babel, because there the Lord confused the language of all the earth; and from there the Lord scattered them abroad over the face of all the earth. (Genesis 11:1,6-9).

Thus, until God confused human language and scattered people abroad, all humans were together and spoke the same language.

As it turns out, the Chinese have evidence that they were associated with that, as well as the Flood and other accounts in the first ten chapters of the Book of Genesis.

Chinese characters are essentially the symbolic representation of words. It is my understanding that both the Chinese and Japanese languages share some of the same characters, and though they pronounce the words differently, thus a few of the characters have the same meaning in Japanese as they do in Chinese. There are over 600 symbols in Chinese writing, and although some were changed in the 20th century, most are still essentially the same as they were thousands of years ago.

Reminiscent of the devil/serpent deceiving Eve in the Garden of Eden (Genesis 3:1-6), the Chinese symbol for Devil is composed of the characters for secret, person, and garden:

鬼 厶 儿 田
 Devil = Secret + Person + Garden

The Bible shows that eight people were saved aboard Noah's Ark. A Chinese word **chuán** for a type of boat is:

船 几 口 舟
 Boat = 8 + Mouth + Little Boat, Vessel

Notice the following Chinese symbol of a tower.

塔 艹 土 人 一 口
 Tower = Grass + Clay + Mankind + 1 + Mouth

The tower of Babel was built with bricks (grass and clay) and humans originally had one language (or mouth). It is possible that this symbol is showing that the ancient Chinese recognized a connection to the biblical tower of Babel.

These are just a few of the Chinese characters (many of which have also been used by the Japanese) that point to a connection to the Book of Genesis.

Notice the following:

...the ancient Chinese people were quite familiar with the same record which the Hebrew Moses is popularly given credit for writing some 700 to 1,000 years later. Imagine this information being stored in special characters that were in use hundreds of years before the first page of the Bible was written!³³¹

It should also be noted that the Chinese have their own legend that China was founded after a flood.³³²

Prophecies involving the Chinese are later in this book.

Korea, Japan, and others in the Far East

The peoples of the Far East are believed to have descended from Noah's son Japheth:

JAPHETH (Heb. "enlarging" or "stretching out") is the father of the prolific Mongoloid, the so-called "Yellow" Asiatic races. (Japheth is also the father of some fair-skinned people).³³³

The Chinese and Koreans both have traditions that say that Korea came from a small kingdom within China.³³⁴

The word Japan may have derived from the son of Japheth named Javan in Genesis.³³⁵ It has been claimed that, "Japan is *Tarshish* of Asia in Bible prophecy"³³⁶ — Tarshish was a son of Javan (Genesis 10:4). Some have also speculated that the

Japanese may have descended from Ashkenaz,³³⁷ a son of Gomer, such as through Ashkenaz's son Togarmah.

Prophecies involving the Koreans, Japanese, and others of the Far East are found later in this book.

Micronesia and other Islands

The original peoples of Micronesia, Melanesia, and Polynesia tended to descend from Noah's sons Ham and/or Japheth, particularly involving marriage across racial lines.

Prophecies related to islands are found later in this book.

The Caribbean and South America

As far as Latin America goes, unlike the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (the Mormons), we do not believe that the indigenous peoples of Latin America represent the 'lost tribes.'

In centuries before the Roman Empire rose to power, the Canaanites from Carthage in North Africa dominated and migrated to the Spanish peninsula. Later, much of Spain was conquered by Arabs and by the descendants of the Carthaginians who bore the name of "Moors" – meaning "Amorites" (Genesis 14:7). There were also the blond Spaniards of Chaldean extraction who entered Spain after 400 A.D.³³⁸

The bulk of the Spanish and Portuguese people who came to the New World were in ancient times the sons of Javan (Genesis 10:4) – though some reportedly were from the tribe of Judah.

When the Spanish and Portuguese came to the New World, they completely eclipsed the culture of nearly all the

indigenous peoples, who were descendants of Tiras, the son of Japheth (Genesis 10:2). As the centuries have passed, the overwhelming bulk of Latin-American people have become MESTIZOS – meaning “mixed.” The ruling classes are still partly Spanish in some areas and some indigenous peoples exist, but most in Latin America are mixed.

Whether mixed or not, the bulk of those in Latin American are considered to ethnically be Gentiles.

Latin America has a lot of ethnic and social ties to Europe, as do many other nations in the Caribbean and South America (which includes a few non-Latin nations – which also have European ties). Though there may be some initial hesitation, those areas are expected to align with the coming Beast power and prosper from it (cf. Revelation 18:15).

However, they will also be subject to the plagues, etc. of the ‘Day of the Lord’ (Revelation chapters 15, 16, & 18). Some military people from Latin America and the Caribbean would be expected to gather related to Armageddon as “the whole world” will be involved (Revelation 16:13-16).

Yet those regions are not prophesied to have the type of destruction that will come from a power “from the north” and “the ends of the earth” that will destroy much of continental Europe (e.g. Jeremiah 50:41-44) – and some in South America may well turn against Europe.

Time of the Gentiles

The Bible teaches that the Gentiles will arise (cf. Ezekiel 7:24, 30:3; Luke 21:24; Revelation 11:2).

A vicious Gentile dominated ‘new world order’ will replace the Anglo-American one relatively soon.

Some believe that the times of the Gentiles are a period of blessing on the nations. This will be true in an economic sense for a time, because the Bible shows that most of the non-Anglo-American nations around the world will prosper for a time (Revelation 18:3c).

But the Bible also teaches that the time of the Gentiles will end after the gathering at Armageddon and the plagues (Revelation 16:16-21) and when Jesus returns (1 Chronicles 16:34-35; Haggai 2:22). Jesus will then establish the millennial Kingdom of God.

All on the earth, Israelite and Gentile will be affected by biblical prophecies.

7. When Will the End of This Age Come?

Since the time of Jesus, His followers have wondered when the end of this age would come (cf. Matthew 24:1-3).

Since the deal of Daniel 9:27 has not yet been confirmed, the Great Tribulation, cannot begin until at least 2026.

Because of biblical prophecy (like Jeremiah 30:7), the fact that the Bible teaches that to “everyone to whom much is given, from him much will be required” (Luke 12:48), and national hypocrisy (Isaiah 10:5-6, KJV), the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies are expected to be amongst the first to suffer from the Great Tribulation (Matthew 24:21) and many taken captive (Amos 6:3-8).

This tribulation period is also called the “time of Jacob’s trouble” (Jeremiah 30:7). It looks to first hit those Jacob wanted his name to be upon (Genesis 48:16) – which would be the descendants of Ephraim and Manasseh. Although some may object because they believe that the U.S.A. and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic allies are more “righteous” than those that will destroy it, this too is prophesied (Habakkuk 1:13; 2:5-8; Isaiah 10:5-19).

When the Great Tribulation starts, it will not be a good time for the U.S.A., nor for its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic allies (nor the nation of Israel). Biblical (“sudden destruction” 1 Thessalonians 5:3; Deuteronomy 29:23-28), Hopi,³³⁹ and Kenyan³⁴⁰ prophecies suggest possible nuclear devastation and/or other high-tech destruction of at least some of their lands.

Notice some of what Jesus Himself taught:

²¹ For then there will be great tribulation, such as has not been since the beginning of the world until this time, no, nor ever shall be ²² **And unless those days were shortened, no flesh would be saved;** but for the elect's sake those days will be shortened (Matthew 24:21-22).

Jesus said this will be a terribly horrific time. As far as those days being shortened, it is likely Jesus was referring to a period of days or months, not years. That said, Jesus also taught:

³⁶ Watch therefore, and pray always that you may be counted worthy to escape all these things that will come to pass, and to stand before the Son of Man. (Luke 21:36)

Jesus taught people to watch what was happening in the world and pray to be able to escape the coming tribulation (in Acts 2:38 the Apostle Peter specifically taught people to repent and be baptized, as well).

The Great Tribulation itself is further described in Revelation 6:9-11 (the fifth seal that seems to occur because the faithful church has suffered martyrdom), Lamentations, Daniel, and other parts of the Bible. The Great Tribulation will include the destruction of the United States.

Now, notice some destructive prophecies that look to affect the U.S.A. and some of its British-descended allies during that time:

²² Yes, a fire has blazed from my anger, it will burn right down to the depths of Sheol; it will devour the earth and all its produce, it will set fire to the footings of the mountains. ²³ I shall hurl disasters on them, on

them I shall use up all my arrows. (Deuteronomy 32:22-23, NJB)

³³ I will scatter you among the nations and draw out a sword after you; your land shall be desolate and your cities waste. (Leviticus 26:33)

But it is not just the descendants of Ephraim and Manasseh that should be concerned.

All should open their Bibles and practice genuine Christianity, before they are subject to being misled by the modified, ecumenical religion, that many will think is 'Christian' (cf. Matthew 24:5; 2 Corinthians 11:14-15) that will come upon the whole world (cf. Revelation 13:3-4), impose the 'mark of the beast' (Revelation 13:16-17, 14:11), and deceive the many which do not have "the love of the truth" (2 Thessalonians 2:9-10).

It should also be noted that the Bible itself does NOT teach true Christian unity until *after* the return of Jesus Christ (Zechariah 2:10-12), but instead warns against the "Babylonian" movement that will precede His return (Zechariah 2:6-9; Revelation 18:2-5).

Of course, God "now commands all men everywhere to repent" (Acts 17:30). But a nation that has been blessed by God should take steps to lead the way (cf. Deuteronomy 4:5-6; Luke 12:48) – and, sadly, that is not expected at this stage.

6000 Year Plan

There is an old Jewish tradition that the prophet Elijah taught that there would be six thousand years for humans to rule under Satan's kingdom, followed by one thousand years of abundance in the kingdom of God.

That Jewish view is consistent with the views of early Christians and some associated with them. Some believed that since God made/recreated the world in six days and rested on the seventh day (Genesis 2:1-3), that humans would have 6,000 years to live on the earth under Satan's influence.³⁴¹ Humans surviving the Great Tribulation and Day of the Lord will have a 1,000 year period to be under Christ's reign (the original creation of the universe may have been billions of years earlier c.f. Genesis 1:2; Isaiah 45:18³⁴²). The 6,000 plus 1,000 years equals God's seven thousand year plan.

Here are specific traditions related to this from the Jewish Babylonian Talmud:

R. Kattina said: Six thousand years shall the world exist, and one [thousand, the seventh], it shall be desolate, as it is written, And the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day {Isaiah 2:11}.

Abaye said: it will be desolate two [thousand], as it is said, After two days will he revive us: in the third day, he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight {Hosea 6:2}.

It has been taught in accordance with R. Kattina: Just as the seventh year is one year of release in seven {Leviticus 25:1-7}, so is the world: one thousand years out of seven shall be fallow, as it is written, And the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day' {Isaiah 2:17}, and it is further said, A Psalm and song for the Sabbath day {Psalm 92:1}, meaning the day that is altogether Sabbath — and it is also said, For a thousand years in thy sight are but as yesterday when it is past {Psalm 90:4}.

The Tanna debe Eliyyahu teaches: The world is to exist six thousand years. In the first two thousand there was desolation; two thousand years the Torah flourished; and the next two thousand years is the Messianic era ... ³⁴³

Note: I inserted the scriptures quoted or alluded to above within {} as many were in the footnotes associated with the above sources.

And while there are some errors from a Christian perspective in those quotes, Jewish sages have taught that there is a six thousand year plan, that the current two thousand years essentially represents the Messianic/Church era, and that a one thousand year period remains.

In a Jewish Midrash (a term that means “exposition” or “investigation”), Pirke De-Rabbi Eliezer comments:

Six eons for going in and coming out, for war and peace. The seventh eon is entirely Shabbat and rest for life everlasting: ³⁴⁴

Again, that is consistent with the view that the world as we know it will end after 6,000 years, followed by a 1,000 year millennium.

Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Whole Bible (a Protestant source), related to Leviticus 25:1-7, states:

In the seventh year shall be a sabbath of rest unto the land, v. 4. Jews collect that vulgar tradition that after the world has stood six thousand years (a thousand years being to God as one day) it shall cease, and the eternal sabbath shall succeed ...

Elsewhere, the Bible itself teaches that a thousand years seems to be as one day to God. This is a concept from both the Old and New Testaments:

⁴ For a thousand years in Your sight Are like yesterday when it is past ... ¹² So teach us to number our days, That we may gain a heart of wisdom. (Psalm 90:4, 12)

⁸ But, beloved, do not forget this one thing, that with the Lord one day is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day (2 Peter 3:8).

Is it not interesting that after stating a thousand years is as a day, the Psalmist was inspired to write that our own days are limited and we should number our days that we may have the heart of wisdom? Thus, understanding approximately where we are in the 6,000 years looks to be a wise thing to do.

Notice also the following from the Book of Genesis (the first book of the Bible) which supports the view of a day being like a thousand years:

¹⁶ And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, "Of every tree of the garden you may freely eat; ¹⁷ but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for **in the day** that you eat of it you shall surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17)

How long was Adam's day before he died?

⁵ So all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years; and he died. (Genesis 5:5)

So, Adam died "in the day"--a day that was not too much less than 1,000 years long.

A day is to God as 1,000 years and that looks to be part of His plan.

Now, some may say, don't the Jews say that we are in year 5783 which runs from September 26, 2022 to September 15, 2023?

Yes, the claimed year is 5783 AM (anno mundi) by the Jews.

However, the Jewish year claim confuses many people as the numbers do not add up with scripture nor secular history.

Many Jewish scholars have recognized this error throughout history, and many believe it was intentional.³⁴⁵ The numbers related to the years were changed in the early 2nd century C.E./A.D. and are now off approximately 200+ years.

Jewish rabbis have generally decided to teach that the Messiah would come at/by the end of 6,000 years (as opposed to their earlier view of 4,000 years). Unless they change their view of the chronology, many will believe that when Jesus returns, it will be too early, and thus once again deny Christ.

When the proper biblical chronologies are used, both Christians and Jews should realize that the 6,000 years likely will not extend more than a decade from now.

Last Days Fit When 1,000 Year Days are Understood

Based upon certain calculations that I am currently aware of, it seems that Adam and Eve were created and/or apparently left the garden of Eden between roughly 3963-3970 B.C. Adding the current year to it, plus one-year to account for the B.C. to A.D. shift, points to the 6000 years to end somewhere between 2029 to 2036—with 2030 to 2033 seeming to be the most likely. It would seem that the 6,000

years began once Adam sinned as Adam had not rebelled before then.

This would mean that when Jesus began to preach (roughly 27 A.D., about four thousand years later) He started preaching late in thousand-year day four and then into day five. Day four is the middle of seven prophetic thousand year days, hence the fourth day is not one of the “last days.”

Interestingly, in the German language, the fourth day of the week is Mittwoch which means mid-full or mid-week – what we call in English Wednesday is not one of the last days of the week, but the middle day.

It is logical that days five, six, and seven could have been considered as part of the “last days” by the early disciples.

If that is so, this helps explain why some New Testament figures indicated that they were in the last days:

¹⁴ But Peter, standing up with the eleven, raised his voice and said to them, “Men of Judea and all who dwell in Jerusalem, let this be known to you, and heed my words. ¹⁵ For these are not drunk, as you suppose, since it is only the third hour of the day. ¹⁶ But this is what was spoken by the prophet Joel: ¹⁷ *‘And it shall come to pass **in the last days**, says God, That I will pour out of My Spirit on all flesh* (Acts 2:14-17).

¹ God, who at various times and in various ways spoke in time past to the fathers by the prophets, ² has **in these last days spoken to us by His Son**, whom He has appointed heir of all things (Hebrews 1:1-2).

If there is no 6,000 year plan of human rule followed by a 1,000 year millennial reign, then the New Testament statement above, about then being in the *last days*, seemingly

makes little sense. But, since it looks like God does have a 7,000 year plan, if that is the case, then these statements do seem to make a lot of sense. And that also explains how come the end has not come yet--there is still a little more time in "the last days."

Since Jesus was preaching into "the last days," He must have been doing some of that in day five of the seven one thousand year days.

Furthermore, since the events in Acts 2 appear to have happened c. 31 A.D. (or 30 A.D. or perhaps as late as 33 A.D.), this would suggest that the 6,000 years may well be up near or by 2031.

Jesus was, of course, alive before 31 A.D., and perhaps the last days began as early as 30 A.D. Of course, if He was impaled and resurrected after 31 A.D., then there is more time—but not a huge amount of time more (most scholars believe 36 A.D. would have been the latest possible date for His death based on certain historical records; though because of the latest apparent date of the death of Herod—perhaps 1 A.D.,— 33 A.D. seems to be the latest date).

Understand that the Bible teaches that "the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy" (Revelation 19:10). God's word teaches that prophecy is important (cf. Isaiah 46:9-11). Prophecy should be important to Christians.

In the early second century, Church of God leader Papias of Hierapolis (who was a hearer of the Apostle John and a friend of Polycarp of Smyrna) taught:

... there will be a period of a thousand years after the resurrection of the dead, and that the kingdom of Christ will be set up in material form on this very earth ... ³⁴⁶

The idea of a six/seven thousand year plan was taught by early Greco-Roman Catholic saints as well. In the late second century, Irenaeus of Lyon taught:

... that apostasy which has taken place during six thousand years. For in as many days as this world was made, in so many thousand years shall it be concluded. And for this reason the Scripture says: "Thus the heaven and the earth were finished, and all their adornment. And God brought to a conclusion upon the sixth day the works that He had made; and God rested upon the seventh day from all His works." This is an account of the things formerly created, as also it is a prophecy of what is to come. For the day of the Lord is as a thousand years; and in six days created things were completed: it is evident, therefore, that they will come to an end at the sixth thousand year ... ³⁴⁷

But when this Antichrist shall have devastated all things in this world, he will reign for three years and six months, and sit in the temple at Jerusalem; and then the Lord will come from heaven in the clouds, in the glory of the Father, sending this man and those who follow him into the lake of fire; but bringing in for the righteous the times of the kingdom, that is, the rest, the hallowed seventh day; and restoring to Abraham the promised inheritance, in which kingdom the Lord declared, ³⁴⁸

So, Irenaeus claimed that the seven days of creation were a type of the seven thousand year plan, that the end of humanity's rule would end after the 6,000 years ended, and would be followed by a type of rest in the Lord's kingdom.

Hippolytus was, and is still considered to have been, an important Roman Catholic leader and saint according to *The Catholic Encyclopedia*:

Hippolytus was the most important theologian and the most prolific religious writer of the Roman Church in the pre-Constantinian era ... ³⁴⁹

Notice something Hippolytus wrote in the early 3rd century:

And 6,000 years must needs be accomplished, in order that the Sabbath may come, the rest, the holy day “on which God rested from all His works.” For the Sabbath is the type and emblem of the future kingdom of the saints, when they “shall reign with Christ,” when He comes from heaven, as John says in his Apocalypse: for “a day with the Lord is as a thousand years.” Since, then, in six days God made all things, it follows that 6,000 years must be fulfilled. ³⁵⁰

Notice therefore that **“the most important theologian and the most prolific religious writer of the Roman Church in the pre-Constantinian era”** taught the 7,000 year plan (6,000 for humankind, followed by 1,000 from God). According to him and others, the 6,000 years end when Jesus returns.

And presuming that the great tribulation begins (Matthew 24:21-22) 3 ½ years before the end of the 6,000 years, which could be 2031, then the great tribulation would start no later than 2028 (if the last days began in 33, then no later 2030). Presuming that ‘last days’ calculation is correct, the end of the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies could occur by then.

It also needs to be understood that there are two types of *last days* referred to in the New Testament. When some were stating that they were in the last days, this indicates the latter

days of the 7,000 year week. However, in other places, New Testament writers sometimes are referring to the time of the final generation before Jesus returns as being the last. They indicate that this latter days was not the same time frame they were writing in (cf. 2 Peter 3:3).

Getting back to Hippolytus, since he understood the “week” in Daniel 9:26-27 to be a seven-year period,³⁵¹ his calculation would point to the deal of Daniel 9:27 occurring 7 years prior to the end of the 6,000 years. If so, that would have that deal confirmed soon.

In the early 20th century, the late Sabbatarian leader G.G. Rupert taught the 6,000 year plan was followed by a 1,000 year millennium.³⁵² As was also taught by the late Sabbatarian Dr. Herman Hoeh much later in that century.³⁵³

The idea of a 6,000-7,000 year plan is not unique to ancient writers or modern writers who are Sabbath-keepers. According to even Roman Catholics, parts of this view have long been the belief of those who claim to believe at least part of the Bible:

Emmett Culligan (20th century): ... the time of the First Resurrection will end ... It is the time when the Seventh Millennium will set in, and will be the day of Sabbath in the plan of creation ... It has been the common opinion among Jews, Gentiles, and Latin and Greek Christians, that the present evil world will last no more than 6,000 years ... Christians and Jews, from the beginning of Christianity, and before, have taught that 6,000 years after the creation of Adam and Eve, the consummation will occur. The period after the consummation is to be the seventh day of creation--the Sabbath ... St. Jerome said, “It is a common belief that the world will last 6,000 years.” ...

I believe that as the last days come to an end so will the sixth day of creation. ³⁵⁴

Priest G. Rossi (19th century): One day with the Lord, then, is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day. It is the common interpretation that each of the six days of creation is equivalent to one thousand years for the future existence of human generations. Now God employed six days in the creation of this world; this world, then, shall last only six thousand years; the Sabbath, or seventh day, representing eternity.

The learned Cornelius A. Lapide, in his erudite commentaries on the Bible, in the second chapter of Genesis and twentieth chapter of the Apocalypse, attests that it is a common opinion among Jews and Gentiles, among Latin and Greek Christians, that this world shall last only six thousand years.

Christian writers have taught the same opinion from the beginning of Christianity ... we learn, then, that the six mystic days of creation are intended to signify the six thousand years of the world's duration. The seventh day, which, to the exclusion of the other six days, God has in a special manner blessed and sanctified, must be taken for the happy eternity of the blessed saints, for the holy sabbath of everlasting rest, for the blissful duration of perpetual peace, and perfect happiness to the elect of God, who will behold him face to face, praise, love, adore, and glorify him forevermore. ...

For those who desire to examine many more Fathers and doctors of the Church, we will here supply a pretty long list of them: St. Cyprian, Lib. IV. Epist. 5;

St. Ambrose, Comment. 2 Thess. 11; the famous book of St. Hypolitus, De Antichristo; St. Hilary, Can. in 17 Matt.; St. Augustine, De Civit Dei, Lib. XX. chap. 17; Lactantius Firmianus, Lib. VII. chaps. 14 and 15; St. Anastasius Sinaita, Lib. XVII. in Hexameron; St. Justin ad orthodox, Quest. 71; St. Germanus, Patriarch of Constantinople, St. Cyril; the ancient writer, Q. Julius Hilarion; Cassiodorus, St. Isidore, Victorinus, Rabanus, Bellarmine, Genebrardus, etc., and many others, who, to use the words of Q. Julius Hilarion, unanimously affirm: Summa completa annorum sex millium fiet resurrectio. At the end of six thousand years shall take place the general resurrection. Our kind critics will please pay some attention to these numerous and grave authorities before they disapprove what we here state.

From all the above-mentioned authorities we learn, then, that the six mystic days of creation are intended to signify the six thousand years of the world's duration. The seventh day, which, to the exclusion of the other six days, God has in a special manner blessed and sanctified, must be taken for the happy eternity of the blessed saints, for the holy sabbath of everlasting rest, for the blissful duration of perpetual peace, and perfect happiness to the elect of God, who will behold him face to face, praise, love, adore, and glorify him forevermore. Amen!

Assuming now as pretty certain that this world shall last only about six thousand years, because such is the common opinion and expectation of humanity, how many years more, it may be asked, still remain to the end of this world.³⁵⁵

While some Roman Catholics may point out that their church does not currently teach that, the truth is that early leaders it considers to be saints did. Furthermore, the book by Emmett Culligan (also once known as “the Culligan man”) “was blessed by Pope Paul VI, 1966,” and the book by priest Rossi was approved by his theological superior for publication.

That being said, time is getting short.

Hindu Writings?

Now, you might be a Hindu or otherwise skeptical of biblical prophecies. As it turns out, certain interpretations of Hindu prophecies point to basically the same time (though they use a 5,000 year period, which started about 1,000 years later). Notice the following:

Lord Krishna says that Kali Yuga will end 5,000 years after its beginning, giving way to a Golden Age. ... **the Dark Age ... will end in 2025 CE.** ³⁵⁶

Now, from a biblical perspective this is a bit too early for the new utopian age (Christians would refer to that age as the millennial kingdom of God).

While this author relies on biblical prophecies, those Hindu reports are eerily consistent with Jesus returning in 7 to 12 years. It may well be some of the Kalki prophecies have demonic-connections intended to encourage those of the Hindu faith to (temporarily) accept the coming European Beast power.

Brief Sequential Summary of Selected End-Time Events

As far as certain end-time events go, here is a brief semi-sequential summary of some items:

1. The basic sequence, as Jesus stated, is that along with religious deception, certain sorrows, violence, and food shortages, troubles will continue (Mark 13:6-8). This is happening.
2. The 'peace' deal of Daniel 9:27 is confirmed. Deals have been proposed, but the biblical one has not yet been made nor confirmed. Because of prophecies related to the destruction of Damascus (Isaiah 17:1) and great damage to be done to Jerusalem (Isaiah 22:8-9), one or both of those events may well precede the deal of Daniel 9:27.
3. A King of the North (who was a 'prince' in Daniel 9:27) and a King of the South (Daniel 11:27) will arise. They will make a lying deal together (Daniel 11:27). Europe will get a "great army," while "a very great and mighty army" will form in the Middle East and North Africa (Daniel 11:25, 40-43). We are seeing the foundations for this now with calls for European and Islamic unity and militaries.
4. Animal sacrifices will begin (cf. Daniel 9:27). (Note: It is possible that the King of the South could arise up prior to Daniel 9:27 or even after the sacrifices resume as could the King of the North). Some Jews would like to start them now, but the Israeli government will not currently allow it.
5. The gospel then will have been preached enough to the world as a witness for the end to come (Matthew 24:14). This seems to be related to the 'short work' of Romans 9:28. As far as God is concerned, Matthew 24:14 has not been sufficiently fulfilled yet.
6. Europe will reorganize into ten 'kingdoms' (not necessarily nations as some have improperly insisted upon) and give power to the Beast per Revelation 17:12-13.
7. The abomination of desolation will then be set up (Matthew 24:15; Mark 13:14) because of actions of the

- King of the North and Jewish sacrifices will be stopped (Daniel 9:27, 11:31, 12:11). The most faithful expect to continue to tell what is happening until they are somehow stopped (cf. Amos 8:11-12).
8. A decree is to be issued (Zephaniah 2:1-3), perhaps by one of the two witnesses. Then the most faithful Philadelphians will “fly” to the wilderness (Revelation 12:14-16) and those in Judea will flee (Matthew 24:15-19; Mark 13:15-18). Prior to when the Great Tribulation starts, the two witnesses will support the work and near its start, they will get special power to do their job (Revelation 11:3).
 9. Bolstered by the Antichrist/False Prophet, then the Great Tribulation will begin (Matthew 24:21-22; Mark 13:19-20; Daniel 11:39, 12:1b; cf. Habakkuk 2:7-8) and the U.S.A. will be attacked. This will eliminate the indebted U.S.A. and lead to the end of its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic descended allies as nations (Daniel 11:39; Jeremiah 30:7; Habakkuk 2:7-8).
 10. About this time, ‘666’ buying and selling will be controlled and the mark of the Beast implemented (cf. Revelation 13:16-18).
 11. The King of the South, shortly after the U.S.A. is attacked, will push against the King of the North and get eliminated (Daniel 11:40-43).
 12. About 28-29 months after the Great Tribulation begins, the sixth seal will be opened, there will be a ‘blood moon’ and a darkened sun (Revelation 6:12; Joel 2:30-31), then the 144,000 of Revelation 7:1-8 will be sealed.
 13. Shortly thereafter, the seventh seal will be opened (Revelation 8:1-6) and the year-long Day of the Lord (Isaiah 34:8) will begin with trumpet blasts, plagues, etc. (Revelation 8:7-13; 9:1-21; 11:13-14).
 14. The crashing of Wormwood into the earth will occur after the third trumpet blast (Revelation 8:10-11). Some might call this Planet X hitting the earth.

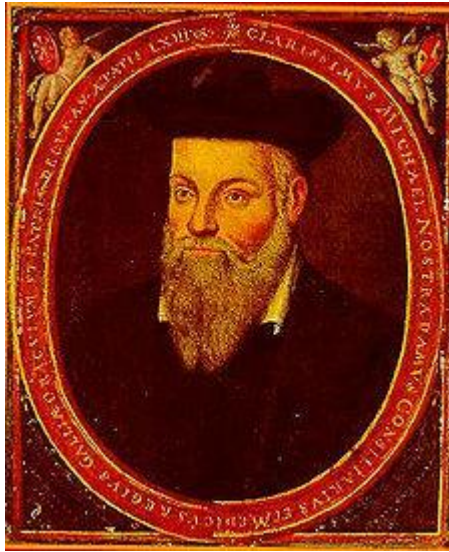
15. The gathering for Armageddon will begin related to the sixth trumpet blast (Revelation 9:13-19; 16:12-16).
16. Then at the seventh trumpet (Revelation 11:15) Jesus will return to establish the millennial kingdom of God.

The Great Tribulation should begin about 3 1/2 years after the peace deal (Daniel 9:27) is confirmed, and right after the King of the North tries to proclaim peace and safety (1 Thessalonians 5:3) to throw people off (cf. Daniel 11:24) for his invasion plans.

The U.S.A. will need to be further weakened in several ways for its conquering to occur. Rising immorality will weaken the U.S.A., as will debt, “natural” disasters, food shortages & pestilences (Ezekiel 5:11-12), and relying on international agreements (Lamentations 1:1-2). The Europeans will need to be stronger militarily, as well as use deceit, to begin their attack. They are currently working on a variety of military projects.

8. Nostradamus and Native American Prophecies

Michel de Nostredame ("Michael of Our Lady," usually Latinized to Nostradamus), was a French apothecary and reputed Roman Catholic seer who published collections of prophecies that have since become famous worldwide.



Nostradamus: Original portrait by his son Cesar

One Roman Catholic writer wrote this about him:

Nostradamus ... A member of the third order of St. Francis, he enjoyed the friendship of Pope Pius IV. He was a devout Catholic all his life ... Nostradamus was an authentic seer.³⁵⁷

Nostradamus probably is best known for his book, *Les Propheties* (The Prophecies), which was first distributed in 1555. It contained a series of 100 sets (called Centuries) of four verse-long prophetic passages (called Quatrains) that many believe were often written cryptically to help preserve

his life from government/church authorities. Others believe that they were written cryptically to make them subject to almost any interpretation, thus of no real predictive value.

If demons provided him with some of his information, they may have had some understandings that have resulted in some of his predictions seemingly coming to pass.

Whether Nostradamus' predictions do or do not have real predictive value, the fact is that a lot of people around the world believe that they may. Thus, some might be influenced by them. In this book, there are a couple of them that we will look at.

The first is Century 4 Quatrain 50 from Nostradamus, with the *Comment* below it from a Roman Catholic writer:

Under the sign of Libra, America shall reign, Shall hold power in the sky and on land, Shall never perish under Asian forces, Until seven Pontificates have passed.³⁵⁸

*Comment on the above from Roman Catholic writer Yves Dupont: "As a great world power, the U.S.A. began its "reign" during the first World War—but it was not the greatest world power ... In 1945, however, the U.S.A. was, by and large, the greatest world power. I think it is from the reign of Pius XII that the seven Pontificates must be counted, and this brings us to the last Pope according to St. Malachy's list—when the world will end."*³⁵⁹

It appears that the above writings suggest that the end of the U.S.A. will thus be in the 21st century. And as far as Asian forces go, this could be interpreted to include terrorists from places like the Near East and other parts of Asia or maybe China. The U.S. has had troops battling "Asian forces" for

some time. Potentially, if this prophecy is related to the U.S.A., its *possible* fulfillment would be relatively soon as Pope Francis is not young and is the pope after pope 111 on the Malachy list (112 pontiffs were on the list)—however since Benedict XVI remained alive for nearly 10 years of Francis’ pontificate, some seem to think Pope Francis would not count as one of the prophesied pontiffs.

Here is a comment about that Quatrain by a writer in India (R. Chopra) in the early 21st century, who then cites Quatrain 74:

The “seven” are the seven millennia in Nostradamus’ calculations which end in A.D. 2000, which also links this quatrain to the quatrain below:

The year the great seventh number is accomplished
Appearing at the time of the games of slaughter, Not
far from the age of the great millennium (2000) When
the dead will come out of their graves.³⁶⁰

Now the above suggests that the forces of Asia will not be destroyed until the “seven hold the hierarchy in succession,” which apparently is in the 21st century. The Bible itself does warn that the “kings of the east/sunrise” will come together at Armageddon (Revelation 16:12–16) and that a 200 million man army will be destroyed (Revelation 9:13–20; 16:16). Such an army must mainly come from Asia. If you are Asian, because of biblical prophecies, you might want to warn your people now to help prevent some of them from supporting that army.

Now, if Y. Dupont is correct about the seven that “hold the hierarchy” being popes until the last one on the Malachy prophecy list, then the end would be relatively soon. And if the Asian Indian writer is correct that the seven times refers

to the end coming in this millennium, the end is coming soon.

Of course, Pope Francis is becoming elderly and we cannot safely rely on non-biblical prophecy.

Yet, *if* there is soon to come an antipope who is the final Antichrist, then the following one of Nostradamus' other Quatrains (Century 10 Quatrain 66) may possibly apply to a U.S.A. president (perhaps the one identified as "Reb" below):

The chief of London through the realm of America,
The Isle of Scotland will be tried by frost: King and
"Reb" will face an Antichrist so false, That he will
place them in the conflict all together.³⁶¹

Quatrain 66 suggests that the leader of the United Kingdom (chief of London and involving Scotland) will be influenced by the western realm of America, with the leader called "Reb" (America rebelled against England in 1776) and will encounter an Antichrist that will ultimately place them into conflict. Hence, Quatrain 66 could be an end-time reference that might take place soon.

Anyway, there are some quatrains from Nostradamus that *might* point to something terribly important happening in the 21st century. I prefer to simply state that the Bible supports the idea that the U.S.A. will be destroyed by a European-led power, and that major changes will happen, including its destruction, in the 21st century.

Native American Prophecies

There are legends related to certain native American prophecies (mainly from Hopi tradition) that seem to foretell

of the time when the white-people of the Americas will be destroyed but that a purification and type of unity will occur:

Native Prophets of the Americas ...

There are parallel themes in many of the prophecies:

1) We are entering a time of purification and can expect to witness chaos and destruction in all the kingdoms of nature.

2) It is a time for the reuniting of the races. Barriers of religion and nationality will begin to fall as all people realize their essential unity.

3) We must heal the damage done to Mother Earth, the source of life, and recognize that all living things are endowed with spirit.

4) In the coming times we will see the return of one or more Great Teachers who will guide us into the future. ... At that time a great Prophet from the east would bring a message of hope to all people. ...

David Gehue, Canadian Mi'kmaq, says we are in the final stages of transition when "The Great Spirit takes the earth in both hands and shakes it violently." He speaks of a mysterious person in olden times who "came from the rising sun and went to the setting sun." He warned them of the coming of seven evil cycles when the great white monster "would disperse the people to lives of misery and destitution." ³⁶²

There are *some* biblical consistencies with the above. Jesus talked about a time of transition, called "the beginning of sorrows" (Matthew 24:4-8) that we now seem to be in, that

comes before the “great tribulation” (Matthew 24:21). Furthermore, the Bible teaches that the great False Prophet (Revelation 19:20) will arise from Europe, which could be considered as part of the east from a native American perspective. The Bible teaches that many will accept him and his message (cf. Revelation 13:8).

The Bible warns of a type of religious unity that is coming (Revelation 13:4,8; 14:11; Zechariah 2:6-7), and some of the Native American prophecies seem to be encouraging this.

The Bible does teach the descendants of Jacob will be attacked and made slaves (cf. Ezekiel 5:12; Revelation 18:13)—and some will be forced to “eat unclean things in Assyria” (Hosea 9:3). The Native American statements related from David Gehue sound consistent with that.

Here is a Hopi prophecy:

The True White Brother will bring with him two great, intelligent and powerful helpers, one of whom will have a sign of a swastika (a masculine symbol of purity), and the sign of the sun. The second great helper will have the sign of a celtic cross with red lines (representing female life blood) between the arms of the cross.

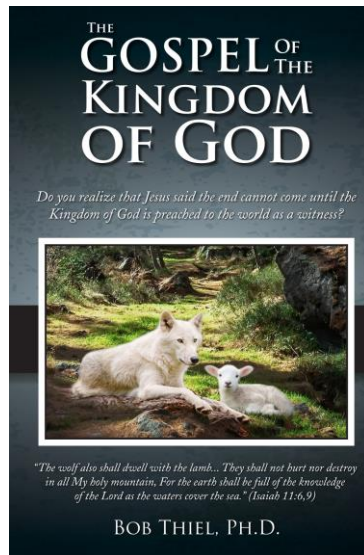
When the Great Purification is near, these helpers will shake the earth first for a short time in preparation. After they shake the earth two times more, they will be joined by the True White Brother, who will become one with them and bring the Purification Day to the world.³⁶³

Note the use of the sign of the sun (Sunday?) and the swastika/cross by two of the parties, one of which is female.

Then they will cooperate with the third. The first and the third may be the False Prophet and the King of the North, and the female could possibly be interpreted to be an apostate church (cf. Revelation 17).

Certain Roman Catholic prophecies seem to warn about a type of cross to be used by the Antichrist.³⁶⁴ So, there may be some alignment with parts of Native American prophecies.

***Do you know the truth about the Gospel of
the Kingdom of God?***



We have a booklet that is freely available at **www.ccog.org** that provides information about what Jesus, His early followers, and others understood about the Gospel of the Kingdom of God. Find out the gospel truth, today! *Note: This booklet is available free online in English and over 200 other languages at www.ccog.org.*

9. The King of the North, and the End of the United States and its British Allies

This chapter will look into some details as to what the 11th chapter of the Book of Daniel teaches about the coming of the final King of the North as well as Roman and Orthodox Catholic prophecies associated with one called the “Great Monarch.”

Some of these prophecies indicate that the “Great Monarch/King of the North” will get a “great army” (Daniel 11:25; that might increase after the U.S.A. is attacked), lead a force that will destroy the United States (Daniel 11:39), and will apparently be assisted by the King of the South (Psalm 83:3-8; Daniel 11:27). Although later, the Kings of the North and South will turn on each other, with the King of the South losing (Daniel 11:40). These biblical outcomes are not only consistent with certain Roman and Orthodox Catholic prophecies, but some Islamic ones as well.

Some Private Prophecies of the Great Monarch

The following Greco-Roman Catholic private prophecies show that in the latter days some expect a future emperor of Europe, who with a major pope (probably a type of antipope), will control the earth:

Capuchin Friar (18th century): A scion of the Carolingian race {a descendant of Charlemagne}, by all considered extinct, will come to Rome to behold and admire the piety and clemency of this Pontiff, who will crown him, and declare him to be the legitimate Emperor of the Romans, and from the Chair of St. Peter, the Pope will lift the standard, the crucifix, and will give it to the new emperor.³⁶⁵

St. Ephraem (5th century): Then the Lord from his glorious heaven shall set up his peace. And the kingdom of the Romans shall rise in place of this latter people, and establish dominion upon the earth, even to its ends, and there shall be no one who will resist it.

Comment on the above from Roman Catholic writer Desmond Birch: He is talking about some future “Kingdom of the Romans” of a “latter people.” ³⁶⁶

Desmond Birch (1996): At some point, the Great King chases an invading Moslem army back to the Holy Land ... The Great King will be crowned Holy Roman Emperor by the reigning Pope.³⁶⁷

Venerable Bartholomew Holzhauser (died 1658): There will rise a valiant monarch anointed by God. He will be Catholic ... He will rule supreme in temporal matters. The pope will rule supreme in spiritual matters at the same time. The reign of the Great Ruler may be compared with that of Caesar Augustus who became Emperor after his victory over his enemies, thereby giving peace to the world, also with the reign of Emperor Constantine the Great, who was sent by God, after severe persecutions, to deliver both the Church and State. By his victories on water and land he brought the Roman empire under subjection, which he then ruled in peace ... **The Great Monarch will have the special help of God and be unconquerable** ... “Golden crown” refers to his Holy Roman (German) Empire ... “Other angels” are the other helpers of the Great Monarch who will help him crush the Turks. ³⁶⁸

It should be noted that the Bible says it is Jesus (Revelation 14:14) who wears the golden crown. The Bible also warns of “other angels” that are called “unclean spirits” that will assist the Beast and Antichrist in Revelation 16:13.

Notice also the following Roman Catholic prophecy:

Brother Louis Rocco (died 1840): A Catholic descendant of a German imperial house (Hapsburg?) will rule a united Germany with peace, prosperity and great power, for God will be with this sovereign (Great Monarch?) ... A Great Monarch will arise after a period of terrible wars and persecutions in Europe. He will be a Catholic, he will not be a German (by birth?).³⁶⁹

It was a Roman Catholic priest who, over 80 years ago, parenthetically-inserted the possibility this was pointing to someone from the Hapsburg/Habsburg line. Various Greco-Roman writers and mystics were foretelling of the rise of a future European “Holy Roman Emperor.”

Perhaps it should be added that on May 6, 2016, Pope Francis said he dreamed of a humane European utopia that his church would assist in bringing about.³⁷⁰

Other “Great Monarch” prophecies state that he will have a father with an imperial title (like Baron?),³⁷¹ establish a new “Catholic” order, be like “Constantine the Great,”³⁷² and that he will offend parts of the Greco-Roman clergy³⁷³ – but he will attain support from a pontiff that does miracles.³⁷⁴

History shows that European emperors who attempt to establish dominion upon the earth tend to do that through conquering and sometimes use religion.

Though, like the Bible (e.g. Revelation 18:1-8), some Roman and Byzantine Catholic prophecies warn against a coming European Babylon, there are some wrongly looking forward to Babylon being re-established by the Great Monarch leader and a pope:

Monk Leontios (died 543): Rejoice, oh most unhappy one, oh New Babylon! ... You, who are the New Babylon rejoice now on behalf of Zion! New Babylon, dance, bounce and leap greatly, ... Because that peace which was yours to enjoy in times past, and which God has deprived you of in course of battles, receive it once more ... oh, the City of Seven Hills the dominion will be yours. ... after the coronation of the new Emperor.³⁷⁵

Abbott Joachim (died 1202) ... A remarkable Pope will be seated on the pontifical throne, under special protection of the angels ... he shall recover the states of the Church, and reunite the exiled temporal powers. As the only Pastor, he shall reunite the Eastern to the Western Church ... The city of Babylon shall then be the head and guide of the world. Rome, weakened in temporal power, shall forever preserve her spiritual dominion, and shall enjoy great peace ... At the beginning, in order to bring these happy results, having need of a powerful assistance, this holy Pontiff will ask the cooperation of the generous monarch of France (Great Monarch).³⁷⁶

Is the “King of the North” European?

While the Great Monarch of Greco-Roman prophecy is European, is the King of the North of biblical prophecy also European?

The simple answer is yes.

The King of the North is discussed in Daniel 11. Now before he is called a “king,” this same leader is called a prince in Daniel 9:26.

Daniel 9:27 shows that this leader takes the same actions that the King of the North does in Daniel 11:31. This prince is foretold to come from the people who destroyed the temple sanctuary in Jerusalem. Since those that destroyed the second temple in Jerusalem in 70 A.D. were part of the Roman Empire, and that prince later is to come from those people, this shows that he is European.

The Bible is also clear that the “Great Sea,” where the Beasts of Daniel 7:2-8 come from, is the Mediterranean Sea (cf. Numbers 34:6-7; Joshua 1:4; 9:1; 23:4; Ezekiel 47:13-16). The King of the North Beast power is not a nation like Russia, which does not border the Mediterranean Sea, but Europe which does. Furthermore, the ancient Roman Empire controlled all sides of that sea and the final Beast is also prophesied to basically do so (cf. Daniel 11:40-43). This same leader is referred to as the beast that rises “up out of the sea” in Revelation 13:1-10.

There are several descriptions of the Beast in the books of Daniel and Revelation that show that this is a European leader.

While many do not believe that the Europeans would be willing to destroy the U.S.A., the Bible shows that despite misgivings such as “he means not so, nor does his heart think so” (Isaiah 10:7), the European power will do so anyway (Isaiah 10:5-11), and with Arabic/Turkish cooperation (Psalm 83:3-8).

Because of Islamic terrorism, years back Geert Wilders wrote an article titled *Political Revolution Is Brewing in Europe*.³⁷⁷ Islamic migrants, economic concerns, religious matters, and U.S.A.-relations will be factors in political change coming to Europe.

The Bible itself shows that Europe will change until it gets to the point of fully supporting the King of the North/Beast power:

¹² “The ten horns which you saw are ten kings who have received no kingdom as yet, but they receive authority for one hour as kings with the beast. ¹³ These are of one mind, and they will give their power and authority to the beast. (Revelation 17:12-13)

Shortly after verse 13 is fulfilled, the ‘666’ mark of the Beast with rules controlling buying and selling will be implemented (cf. Revelation 13:11-18). The use of digital (or some other type of electronic) currency will allow the type of control that was not possible when the Apostle John penned the Book of Revelation over 1900 years ago. The *European Central Bank* announced it is looking to go more and more towards a digital currency and away from cash:

[C]ash ... is by construction not “fit” for the digital age. ... Accordingly, the introduction of digital cash in the form of a CBDC appears to be the only solution to guarantee a smooth continuation of the current monetary system.³⁷⁸

While claiming that a CBDC (Central Bank Digital Currency) is the only solution is not accurate, CBDCs are monitorable and controllable.

As far as financial monitoring goes, the European Union' *European Public Prosecutor's Office* officially started operations on 1 June 2021.³⁷⁹ Since financial "crimes" are its focus, a version of it may well function as an enforcement arm of 666 controls in the future.

That said, after the Beast is in power, there will be a change by supporters of the Beast (including the Antichrist/Antipope³⁸⁰) to betray the Church of Rome (Revelation 17:9,15-18), which had originally supported the reorganizations of Revelation 17:12-13.

The Bible warns of terrible consequences for taking the mark of the Beast (Revelation 14:9-11). This will be a difficult time for Christians, though they will still refuse the mark and will continue to keep God's commandments (Revelation 14:12).

More Concerns About the Great Monarch

Because of scriptural warnings, Greco-Roman Catholics (and all others) would do well to not follow the one known as the Great Monarch. Some, of course, do realize this as the following shows:

The tradition of the Great King and the Holy Pope ... first emerged from the Tiburtine Sibyl, a work that may date back to AD 380-400 ...

Catholic writer Paul Thigpen warns, "Looking for the Great Monarch, then, who does not appear in Scripture, might lead to overlooking the Antichrist who does. It might even lead to--a more disturbing thought--to mistaking the Antichrist for the Great Monarch. After all, lesser antichrists of the past such as Hitler and Stalin have seduced followers with

visions of grand and glorious earthly kingdoms. Surely Antichrist of the last days will do the same.³⁸¹

“Could looking for the Great Monarch, then, lead believers to overlook the Antichrist, or even to mistake the one for the other?”³⁸²

The reality is that many will see the King of the North as some type of ‘Great Monarch’ and support this Beast that the Bible warns against.

Notice a Greek Orthodox prophecy related to the ‘Great Monarch’:

Anonymou Paraphrasis (11th century): The one true King, ... whom men have expelled from his own dwelling ... will be revealed when the time of the power of the Ishmaelites comes to an end. ... Men thought of him that he is a nobody and useful for nothing.³⁸³

One considered to be a useless nobody will rise up.

Notice the following scriptural paraphrases about a coming king:

²¹ “His place will be taken by a reject, a man spurned and passed over for advancement. He’ll surprise everyone, seemingly coming out of nowhere, and will seize the kingdom. ²² He’ll come in like a steamroller, flattening the opposition. (Daniel 11:21-22a, The Message)

²¹ The successor of this king of the north will be a worthless nobody, who doesn’t even come from a royal family. He will suddenly appear and gain

control of the kingdom by treachery. (Daniel 11:21, CEV)

Did you notice the similarities of the Great Monarch being warned against in scripture? A disgraced politician, such as a former German Defense Minister who was passed over from being Chancellor, could fill that role.

Now look at Daniel 11:21 from a more direct translation:

²¹ And in his place shall arise a vile person, to whom **they will not give the honor of royalty**; but he shall come in peaceably, and seize the kingdom by intrigue. (Daniel 11:21)

As it turns out, while certain descendants of the Habsburg family in Austria go through an investiture ceremony declaring them royals with various titles, such does not happen with Habsburg descendants in Germany – they are NOT given the honor of royalty.

Daniel 11:23-24 warns that this leader will gain power with a small number of supporters and devise plans against a strong power (“the strongholds”):

²³ And after the league is made with him he shall act deceitfully, for he shall come up and become strong with a small number of people. ²⁴ He shall enter peaceably, even into the richest places of the province; and he shall do what his fathers have not done, nor his forefathers: he shall disperse among them the plunder, spoil, and riches; and he shall devise his plans against the strongholds, but only for a time. (Daniel 11:23-24)

Other translations refer to him being involved in a ceasefire (The Message), alliances (DRB, NJB, NLT), or a treaty (CEV, GNT, WEB), which is consistent with Daniel 9:26-27.

Old and New Roman Empire

Before going further, some have wondered if any of the Israelitish-descended nations in Europe could be part of the final Beast power.

Yes, most are expected to be.

History shows us that France, Switzerland, and at least parts of the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Belgium, and the United Kingdom were part of old Roman Empire. An empire prophesied by Daniel.

It is commonly recognized by theologians of various persuasions that Daniel 7:7 is a reference to the ancient Roman Empire.

The fact that at least part of the Israelitish peoples were part of the beasts in Daniel 2:40-43 and 7:2-7, should show all that they, for a time, can still be part of the final Beast power.

It should also be pointed out that parts of France, Italy, Germany, Austria, Poland, Slovenia, Czech Republic, Croatia, as well as essentially all of the Netherlands, Lichtenstein, Luxembourg, Switzerland, and Belgium were part of the so-called "Holy Roman Empire."³⁸⁴ Consider also that three members of the House of Luxembourg reigned as "Holy Roman Emperors."

So, the idea that the final revival of such a mixed Israelite-Gentile empire could include Israelitish nations is consistent with history.

Daniel 11:27-39

Chapter 11 of the Book of Daniel discusses various leaders, including those known as the King of the North and the King of the South. The one who will be the King of the North is prophesied to rise up “When the transgressors have reached their fullness” (Daniel 8:23), which suggests that this is about the time when God has had enough of the increasing immorality in nations like the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies.

We will now look at a verse by verse discussion of the sequence from Daniel 11:27-39.

Why there?

Because this verse 27 is the first place in that chapter that the “appointed time” of “the end” is mentioned (even though some verses prior also apply).

The “appointed time” and the “end” (in Hebrew transliterated as *mowed’ qets*) are terms used elsewhere by Daniel (e.g. Daniel 8:19) to describe end-time events.

In Daniel 11, there is an “appointed time” (*mowed’* Strong’s #4150) in vss. 27, 29, and 35 (which indicates the events being discussed are still all in the future) (this term is also used for the same time period in Habakkuk 2:3 and Zephaniah 3:18).

The specific word translated as “the end” is the same word (*qets* Strong’s 7093) in vss. 27, 40, and 45 (the same Hebrew word, for apparently the same time. That word is also used in Habakkuk 2:3, Amos 8:2, Ezekiel 7:2-6). Daniel 11:45 is where the King of the North comes to his final end (the Hebrew term *qets* is also used in vs. 40 when the King of the

North invades the King of the South, which is apparently the end of the King of the South).

Thus, these passages refer to the same general time period at the end.

They have not been completely fulfilled, despite claims from preterists: these passages need to be understood as prophetic in the early 21st century.

Greco-Roman Catholic, Protestant, and other scholars are correct that there was some semi-fulfillment of many of these verses by Antiochus Epiphanes and others, as there is a duality in some prophecies (cf. 1 Corinthians 15:45-47; Jeremiah 23:7-8). However, since the final appointed time has not yet come, these verses specifically do have a final end-time fulfillment.

And the proper place to look for the final fulfillment to begin is no later than verse 27 (though verses 20-23 seem to precede, with verses 24-26 seemingly paralleling some of the later verses).

Anyway, beginning with Daniel 11:27, with the scriptures in **bold**:

27 Both these kings' hearts *shall be bent on evil, and they shall speak lies at the same table; but it shall not prosper, for the end will still be at the appointed time.* (NKJV)

27 The heart also of the two Kings shall be to evil, and at one table they shall speak lies, and they shall not prosper: because as yet the end unto another time. (DRB)

The “they” is referring to the kings of the North and South, as they are the kings both later and earlier mentioned in most of Daniel 11.

Verse 27 suggests that some type of bad agreement is made between the two – this would seem to be the deal that leads to the fulfillment of Psalm 83. It is highly likely that this deal will be portrayed publicly as a type of peace deal, but in fact will unleash terror.

In his commentary related to this verse, the Greco-Roman saint Jerome stated his belief “that all these things refer to the Antichrist and to the king of Egypt.”³⁸⁵ Thus the idea that there is a future fulfillment of Daniel 11, starting no later than verse 27, is not simply a modern concept.

Some, including the Jehovah’s Witnesses, have correctly taught, “The designations ‘the king of the north’ and ‘the king of the south’ refer to kings north and south of Daniel’s people ...{in} to the land of Judah.”³⁸⁶ Yet, despite the correct understanding of geography, the Jehovah’s Witnesses incorrectly concluded that in the 20th century the United States and the United Kingdom became the King of the South.³⁸⁷

Psalm 83 shows that an Arab-Turkish confederation will arise and want to eliminate the descendants of Israel, perhaps through terrorism and warfare, and that the Assyrian (apparently European based on other prophecies) power decides to join them in order for this to succeed.

Daniel 11:27 likely sets the stage for proposing that the Antichrist supporters come to Jerusalem to eliminate Israeli control of that city, as well as to fulfill Daniel 11:31 and probably Daniel 11:39.

Notice that this deal in Daniel 11:27 will be based upon deceit but will result in the end coming **at the appointed time**. Thus, this deal apparently pertains to the appointed time of the end.

Because of that, the Bible clearly supports the idea that *there must be a future fulfillment of verse 27 onwards*. Yet, most details of the deal will likely not be made public.

28 While returning to his land with great riches, his heart shall be *moved* against the holy covenant; so he shall do damage and return to his own land.

In addition to setting the stage for a prosperous King of the North (see also verse 36 below), the above specifically indicates that something will upset the King of the North, apparently related to a visit to the Palestine/Israel area, and he will return to his own land (Europe) upset with the holy covenant, which is probably the most faithful of spiritual Israel (Romans 9:6).

During the end times, true Christians would seem to have to be the people of the holy covenant (see Matthew 26:28; Hebrews 8:6–13; Daniel 12:7). Baptism, obedience, and receiving God’s Holy Spirit is what makes one an heir of the “holy covenant” in the New Testament, (cf. Luke 1:72–73; Acts 2:38–39, 5:32; Galatians 3:26–29; Romans 8:9–11).

The reason that the King of the North may be *moved against* the most faithful Christians is that they may be somewhat effectively reporting/broadcasting what this deal in verses 27 may mean—as well as what is expected to happen next. They may also have tried to expose the deal in Daniel 9:26–27, if it was confirmed earlier, as well.

By this time, the short work/word Paul mentioned in Romans 9:28 probably will have begun or be almost finished, as will the gospel preaching of Matthew 24:14 that Jesus spoke of. Both are part of what I have termed “the final phase of the work.”

What causes the northern king’s heart to be against the holy covenant of the most faithful in God’s Church, and what he does then is not specified in Daniel’s writings. It should perhaps be noted that the word “damage” is not in the original Hebrew, so perhaps something else may be going on.

For example, the King of the North may simply say something publicly, such as threatening to affect the true *Philadelphia* Christians’ (Revelation 3:7-13) ability to continue to broadcast messages such as the gospel of the kingdom of God, a message that is not popular, with many. He could call the message hate speech, a conspiracy theory, extremist, fake news, dangerous, misinformation, and/or whatever he thinks may get his point across.

As far as Philadelphian Christians go, the *United States Conference of Catholic Bishops* explains:

“The letter to Philadelphia praises the Christians there for remaining faithful even with their limited strength... they will be kept safe at the great trial ... [3:8] **An open door:** opportunities for sharing and proclaiming the faith.”³⁸⁸

The true end-time *Philadelphia* Christians’ are those who go through the open door of Revelation 3:7-8 to proclaim the Gospel (cf. Colossians 4:3) and have truly held fast to biblical teachings (Revelation 13:7-13; 14:12).

These genuine and most faithful Church of God Christians (Acts 20:28) may have upset the King of the North by telling the world in general, and the North Americans in particular, that he is apparently the prophesied King of the North, likely the Great Monarch of Greco-Roman Catholic prophecy, he will lead end time Babylon, and that he will soon invade and destroy Israel and the Anglo-American nations (Daniel 11:31,39) and then an Arabic-Muslim confederation (Daniel 11:40-43).

Notice the following translation of verse 28 in the *Contemporary English Version* (CEV). It supports the view that the holy covenant could be the true Christians at the end, as Christianity, and not Judaism, is now the “religion of God’s people.” The *Douay-Rheims Bible* also seems to support this when it uses the term “holy testament”:

28 Then the king of the north will return to his country with great treasures. But on the way, he will attack the religion of God’s people and do whatever else he pleases. (CEV)

28 And he shall return into his land with much riches: and his heart against the holy testament, and he shall prosper and shall return into his own land. (DRB)

The *Good News Translation* (GNT) states the king becomes “determined to destroy the religion of God’s people.” Hence, Daniel 11:28 supports the notion that the true church is the holy covenant/holy testament. Jerome also pointed out that the holy covenant dealt with people related to “our Lord.”

389

Notice also the following rendering of this verse from *The Message* (MSG) translation:

²⁸ The king of the north will go home loaded down with plunder, but his mind will be set on destroying the holy covenant as he passes through the country on his way home. (MSG)

There is something intriguing about the above rendering.

It suggests that the King of the North has made up his mind that it is time to destroy the holy covenant, or at least part of the Christian message. He may have decided to begin persecution, interfere with broadcasting/internet abilities (cf. Amos 8:11-12), and/or at least begin to think of plans to affect these Christians. These actions are likely to begin no later than Daniel 11:30, unless one or more begins in or by 11:28 (both of which are shortly before the start of the Great Tribulation).

Regardless of the verse that shows when this persecution precisely begins, it is clear that a specific persecution will happen through verse 35, and it may include all of the forty-five-day period (1335 days-1290 days), and part of the thirty-day-period (1290 days-1260 days), in Daniel 12:11-12.

This looks to be the time when Satan is cast to the earth. Let us notice what Revelation 12:13-14 shows:

¹³ Now when the dragon saw that he had been cast to the earth, **he persecuted the woman** who gave birth to the male Child.

¹⁴ But the woman was given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness to her place, where she is nourished for a time and times and half a time.

This persecution appears to mainly be a persecution against the *Philadelphian* Christians (Revelation 3:8), as they are given protection shortly thereafter (Revelation 3:10). Yet it needs to be understood that the woman is apparently still persecuted until verse 16 of Revelation 12, therefore, the persecutions of the Philadelphians apparently occur until Daniel 11:35—when the archangel Michael may stand (Daniel 12:1), a decree is issued (Zephaniah 2:1-3), and the Philadelphians flee into the wilderness, for protection (Revelation 3:7-10).

Even the *Book of Mormon* speaks of a time when a great kingdom will arise with a great church and persecute:

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church ... which is abominable ... which slays the saints of God, yea and tortureth them ...³⁹⁰

Also, notice that the Bible states:

⁶“Flee from the land of the north,” says the LORD ...⁷
Up Zion! Escape you that dwell with the daughter of Babylon (Zechariah 2:6, 7).

It may be that prior to going to a place of protection (cf. Revelation 12:13-14), some Christians will flee out of the lands dominated by the rising King of the North prior to him moving into Jerusalem, probably during verses 28-30 of Daniel 11, as this is when the King of the North begins his anger against God’s most faithful. Since God’s faithful will apparently understand these passages in Daniel 11 by then (cf. Daniel 12:10), some will not wait until verses 30 or 31 to flee from the north, and will most likely go to the areas of Judea/Israel.

29 At the appointed time he shall return and go toward the south; but it shall not be like the former or the latter.

The 'he' is still the King of the North. This verse suggests that the "appointed time" is not only different than any before, but that **this is the specific appointed time that leads to the final end** of both the King of the North and the King of the South (cf. vs. 27).

Although he had other misunderstandings, even the 19th century Protestant commentator, Andrew Faucett, realized that the deal in Daniel 11:27 is related to the fulfillment in verse 29 as he wrote the following about Daniel 11:29:

29. At the time appointed--"the time" spoken of in Daniel 11:27.³⁹¹

Political interference, with perhaps bringing some troops on ships, is probably what is happening in verse 29 as ships come against this King in the next verse.

30a For ships from Cyprus shall come against him;

According to *Vine's Expository Reference*, the Hebrew term translated as Cyprus above, *kittim*, means "Western lands."³⁹²

The Roman Catholic Jerome wrote about this as follows:

*"And his heart shall be against the holy covenant, and he shall succeed and return into his own land. At the time appointed he shall return and shall come to the South; but the latter time shall not be like the former. And the galleys shall come upon him, and the Romans, and he shall be dealt a heavy blow." Or, as another has rendered it, "... and they shall threaten him with attack."*³⁹³

Daniel 11:30 suggests that a major western naval power will put on a display of force and that will upset the south-heading King of the North, who will then decide to enter at least the area where Jews are making sacrifices, perhaps in retaliation for that action and/or to satisfy the complaints of his King of the South allies (vs. 27). A similar passage is in Numbers 24:24, which according to Numbers 24:14, is clearly for the latter times—and in it, the Western naval power troubles descendants of Asshur/Assyria, many of whom now are residing in Europe.

It is of interest to note that the U.S.A. and its ships, from a Judean or European Union perspective, are from western lands.

Of course, it is also possible that the U.S.A. or some other country could have naval ships in Cyprus or some other western land. However, **no small country with a minor naval presence would be likely to stop the King of the North at that stage of history—thus the U.S.A. (perhaps with some of its British-descended allies) seems to be the only possible naval force mentioned here.**

Note: Because the nation of Cyprus, and many other western European countries, are part of the European Union, we have to eliminate them as being part of the “Western lands” in Daniel 11. Furthermore, since the Kings to the East and North are not alluded to until Daniel 11:44, we have to eliminate Russia, China, India, and Japan as possible naval forces for verse 30 (plus, of course, those nations are east and north, not west of Jerusalem).

Also, because the Arab nations would tend to be supporters of the King of the South, there is no nation in an actual “western” area that this could possibly refer to in the early

21st century other than the U.S.A., Canada, the Caribbean, or Latin America.

And neither Latin America, nor the non-Spanish Caribbean countries, seem capable, at this point, of having a naval force that would stop the King of the North. Thus, watching and understanding current world events, as Jesus advised, (e.g. Mark 13:32-37) makes it clear that the naval power would have to be the U.S.A. and possibly also include one or more of its English-speaking allies.



Canadian and American Warships

Here is the entire verse 30 from five different translations: the *Bible in Basic English* (BBE), GOD'S WORD® Translation ©1995 (GWT), LSV, NJB, and the CEV:

For those who go out from the west will come against him, and he will be in fear and will go back, full of wrath against the holy agreement; and he will do his pleasure: and he will go back and be united with those who have given up the holy agreement. (BBE)

Ships will come from the west to attack him, and he will be discouraged and turn back. Angry at the holy promise, he will return, take action, and favor those who abandon the holy promise. (GWT)

And ships of Chittim have come in against him, and he has been pained, and has turned back, and has been insolent toward the holy covenant, and has worked, and turned back, and he understands concerning those forsaking the holy covenant. (LSV)

The ships of the Kittim will oppose him, and he will be worsted. He will retire and take furious action against the holy covenant and, as before, will favour those who forsake that holy covenant. (NJB)

Ships from the west will come to attack him, and he will be discouraged. Then he will start back to his own country and take out his anger on **the religion of God's faithful people**, while showing kindness to those who are unfaithful. (CEV)

Notice that the ships, while they may come to attack, do not have to actually attack the King of the North at this time—and that they seem to come from “the west.”

But also notice that instead of taking his anger out against the naval power that sends the ships, the King of the North takes out his anger against what scripture looks to suggest is *the religion of God's faithful people!*

It seems obvious that these are the faithful Christians who are doing the main specific end-time work of God at this time. And they will be explaining these prophecies to the world.

About five years after I first thought that Daniel 11:30 could be referring to United States warships, I came across the following in a book written about Greco-Roman prophecies by Gerald Culleton:

Countess Francesca de Billiante (died 1935): When the land with the great fleet enters the Mediterranean (England or the United States?) then Europe will tremble ... God will save Rome ...³⁹⁴

The comments in () were inserted by the late Roman Catholic priest and writer Gerald Culleton.

Because the Bible shows that the spirit world has knowledge of scripture (Matthew 4:5-6), it would appear that some spirits may have inspired this and certain private prophets to make a variety of statements throughout history to try to confuse people at the end (cf. 1 Timothy 4:1; 2 Corinthians 2:11). The statement from the Countess may have been intended to tell the Europeans that they should not be too afraid of the coming Anglo and/or American ships.

While priest Culleton did not connect this prediction to Daniel 11:30 in his writing, notice the following by Roman priest, Professor P. Huchedé, which connects that verse to Western naval forces:

It seems he will probably be defeated by certain people of the Western nations, who will give him a naval battle ... (11:30). But he will soon recover from this defeat.³⁹⁵

When this event happens, all should realize that it is showing that Daniel 11:30, etc. is being fulfilled. The King of the North and his allies will not want people to believe this.

THIS WILL BE A MAJOR SIGN FOR PEOPLE WHO WILL PAY ATTENTION AND HEED THAT THE END (the start of the Great Tribulation) IS VERY NEAR.

30b therefore he shall be grieved, and return in rage against the holy covenant, and do *damage*.

Partially because the U.S.A./U.K. led naval forces have stopped him AND the most faithful Christians are causing the modified ecumenical religion problems (as the media is likely to report much more of the Philadelphian Church's message then), the King of the North will decide to do something to the members of the true Church ("damage" is not in the Hebrew) after he returns. This would be because he is "in rage against **the holy covenant.**"

Around the late fourth century, Jerome taught about this portion of the verse:

... foreshadows the Antichrist, who is to persecute the people of Christ.³⁹⁶

The King of the North will most likely try to stop the supporters of the true church from proclaiming the truth about his intentions and from proclaiming "the gospel of the kingdom" (cf. Matthew 24:14) – which will be in opposition to his message. In the past several years, many in Europe and elsewhere have taken steps to be able to censor internet content, and some of that looks to be prophesied to happen.

It continues to strike me as important that although a western naval power stops the King of the North momentarily, **the King of the North becomes seemingly more enraged with the people of the holy covenant than with the naval power.** He wants to eliminate the rising up of what some Greco-Roman prophecies call the "secret sect."³⁹⁷

Why would this be?

Most likely this occurs because the people of the holy covenant (seemingly called the “secret sect” by certain Roman Catholic seers) are warning the world that the King of the North is fulfilling these prophecies in Daniel 11. This enrages the King of the North so much that he tries to eliminate these people. The King of the North simply does not want the small continuing faithful Church telling the world in general, or the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic-American nations in particular, what some of his plans really are. Perhaps he also thinks that his relationship with the then U.S.A. president is still close enough that he has enough influence to push his censorship.

Jesus clearly taught that persecution would affect His people just prior to the beginning of the Great Tribulation:

⁷ And there will be famines, pestilences, and earthquakes in various places. ⁸ All these are **the beginning of sorrows**. ⁹ Then **they will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you**, and you will be hated by all nations for My name’s sake. ¹⁰ And then many will be offended, will betray one another, and will hate one another (Matthew 24:7-10).

¹⁴ And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached in all the world as a witness to all the nations, and then the end will come. ¹⁵ “Therefore when you see the ‘abomination of desolation,’ spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place” (whoever reads, let him understand), ¹⁶ then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains...²¹ For **then there will be great tribulation** (Matthew 24:14-16;21).

So, notice that some period of time after the sorrows have begun, faithful Christians will be delivered up. Many will be killed, and many will be betrayed by those pretending to be

Christians. Christ's "gospel of the kingdom is preached to the world as a witness," then the GREAT tribulation will come shortly thereafter. This clearly ties in with the events of Daniel 11, as Jesus Himself seemed to tie Daniel 11:31 into Matthew 24:15.

This may be precisely when God has the work of His Philadelphia remnant church, in a more organized manner, stopped (Romans 9:28; Amos 8:11)—perhaps getting kicked off electronic media, probably including much (or all) of the internet. However, at least parts of the message will apparently continue to go out by scattered and fleeing individuals, as well as the two witnesses who will be rising up. It may be (and this is certainly speculative) that the Americans agree to stop (or pressure or suspend on some pretext) the faithful church's ability to boldly proclaim the message as part of the negotiations that certainly will be needed because of the encounter between the King of the North (Europe) and the naval forces of the West (America).

Part b of verse 30 appears to parallel Matthew 24:9–10. This indicates that some type of persecution of true Christians will begin before the "gospel of the kingdom" will have gone to the world as a witness, as that is completed in Matthew 24:14. Notice that the end comes once the Christians have successfully proclaimed the "gospel of the kingdom." This success would have been attained with inadvertent assistance through media coverage of what the faithful continuing Philadelphian remnant is teaching.

It is possible that verse 30b is when the two witnesses of Revelation 11:3 officially appear with power (or perhaps in or between vss. 31–39), as they will undoubtedly enrage the King of the North— as will any of the other faithful Christians who do the work.

30c So he shall return and show regard for those who forsake the holy covenant.

It is somewhat possible that “those who **forsake** the holy covenant” are former “Christians,” who in that sense have actually forsaken the biblical covenant.

Perhaps this includes those involved in the prophesied falling away (c.f. 2 Thessalonians 2:3). The reason that the King of the North might wish to show them some type of favor may be so the King can learn more about the Christians to better be able to identify, eliminate, and/or persecute the faithful. His plan is to get them to betray the faithful Christians (cf. Matthew 24:10).

Here is what the Greco-Roman saint Jerome taught about the fulfillment of this portion of the verse:

... this is to be more amply fulfilled under the Antichrist, for he shall become angered at the covenant of God and devise plans against those whom he wishes to forsake the law of God.³⁹⁸

The Beast and the Antichrist will be against the law of God and violate all of His Ten Commandments (for details, check out the free book, available online at ccog.org titled *The Ten Commandments: The Decalogue, Christianity, and the Beast*).

Notice that Jesus listed betrayal just before the abomination of Daniel is mentioned:

¹² Now brother will betray brother to death, and a father his child; and children will rise up against parents and cause them to be put to death. ¹³ And you will be hated by all men for My name's sake. But he who endures to the end shall be saved.

¹⁴“So when you see the ‘abomination of desolation,’ spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing where it ought not” (let the reader understand), “then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains” (Mark 13:12-14).

Thus, it appears that Daniel is referring to a betrayal—a deliverance to persecuting authorities—by supposed believers and/or the members of their physical family. In Matthew 24:10 Jesus also makes a similar warning.

31 And forces shall be mustered by him, and they shall defile the sanctuary fortress; then they shall take away the daily sacrifices, and place *there* the abomination of desolation.

The above verse shows that the forces of the King of the North will stop the daily sacrifices. Of course, for the daily sacrifices to stop, they will have had to start. Thus, the start of such sacrifices is a prophetic event that one can watch for (cf. Matthew 24:15; Luke 21:20). Since December 10, 2018, certain Jews claim to have a Sanhedrin-dedicated altar to be able to do that.³⁹⁹

While the term “sacrifices” is not in the original Hebrew, Daniel 9:27 mentions what appears to be the same desolate abominations. The Hebrew text shows that the sacrifices and offerings will be stopped. It may be that part of the reason the King of the North will give for going into Jerusalem with armies is to stop extremists from having daily sacrifices that may provoke the Muslims, animal rights advocates, and/or others.

Interestingly, this starting of sacrifices in Israel might be perceived as the terrible crime that a Roman Catholic leader long ago prophesied would lead to some type of destruction:

Abbot Herman of Lehnin (died 1300) Towards the end of the world "Israel will commit a terrible crime for which it will suffer death."⁴⁰⁰

In these days, because of 'animal rights' and Islamic influences, animal sacrifices may be perceived to be a terrible crime. On the other hand, the Bible tells of the destruction of Damascus (Isaiah 17:1), and the nation of Israel may be involved in that and/or something involving Iran.

Unlike in Daniel 11:30, notice that the King of the North meets no strong naval resistance in verse 31. This may be because he negotiated something with the U.S.A. to allow him (possibly with an "antipope") to go to Jerusalem to broker/enforce some kind of "peace" in the Middle East.

Yet, it is likely that the King of the North will do things that he had not told the U.S.A. he would do; such as go after the Philadelphian Christians and interfere with Jewish practices and/or politics.

This may then inflame the U.S.A. to make statements (as it may feel at least partially betrayed) that could lead to one of the reasons that the King of the North decides on a near immediate "blitzkrieg" invasion of the U.S.A. and/or its British-descended allies 30 days after stopping the daily sacrifices.

The fact that the Europeans could be controlling at least part of the U.S.A.'s global positioning capabilities by then⁴⁰¹ (the related agreement of which happened under the Obama-Biden Administration) may also be enough to embolden the

European King, especially if he feels Europe has developed other powerful weapons technology.

This King will employ deceit:

²¹ ... he shall come in peaceably, and seize the kingdom by intrigue. (Daniel 11:21)

²³ “And in the latter time of their kingdom, When the transgressors have reached their fullness, A king shall arise, Having fierce features, Who understands sinister schemes. ²⁴ His power shall be mighty, but not by his own power; He shall destroy fearfully, And shall prosper and thrive; He shall destroy the mighty, and also the holy people.

²⁵ “Through his cunning he shall cause deceit to prosper under his rule; And he shall exalt himself in his heart. He shall destroy many in their prosperity. (Daniel 8:23-25)

The King of the North will deceitfully proclaim “peace and safety” while plotting for the sudden destruction of those opposing him (1 Thessalonians 5:2-3). He will destroy the mighty American-British alliance.

Because of not accepting and understanding biblical prophecies, many political and other leaders will be hoping for and believing in a false peace. The sudden destruction to come is likely to include a nuclear or other high tech attack, and could possibly happen in conjunction with a NATO training or other exercise that would catch the U.S.A. and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic allies off guard (cf. Lamentations 1:1-2). Other nations are likely to also be involved.

Nuclear Destruction?

Doesn't the following sound like nuclear-type destruction?

²³ 'The whole land is brimstone, salt, and burning; it is not sown, nor does it bear, nor does any grass grow there, **like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah**, Admah, and Zeboiim, which the Lord overthrew in His anger and His wrath.' ²⁴ All nations would say, 'Why has the Lord done so to this land? What does the heat of this great anger mean?' ²⁵ Then people would say: 'Because they have forsaken the covenant of the Lord God of their fathers ... (Deuteronomy 29:23-25)

God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah for their pride and sexual immorality (Ezekiel 16:49-50; 2 Peter 2:6).

God's word points out that what will happen to the Anglo-lands will actually be worse than what happened to Sodom:

⁶ The punishment of the iniquity of the daughter of my people Is greater than the punishment of the sin of Sodom, Which was overthrown in a moment, With no hand to help her! (Lamentations 4:6)

The time will come when the U.S.A. and NATO will be no more. NATO or other arrangements will give the Europeans cover for publicly preparing for a military event, while giving it the ability to publicly state that such preparations are only parts of an exercise. The Germans have historically used the element of surprise to gain military advantage – remember WWII and blitzkrieg? Europe one day will turn on the U.S.A. (Lamentations 1:1-2, Daniel 11:39; Isaiah 10:5-12). Weapons of mass destruction, and not necessarily just nuclear, will be employed.

According to Greco-Roman private prophecies, the Great Monarch, apparently with his forces, is expected to go to Jerusalem toward the beginning and again at the end of his reign and fight:

Y. Dupont (20th century): The Great King will be of Frankish descent, although his actual nationality is uncertain...It seems that he will travel twice to Jerusalem, once at the beginning of his reign...and again at the end to fight... and be killed...⁴⁰²

Helen Otto Tzima (2000): Jerusalem will be invaded in WWII and finally liberated by the Great Monarch.⁴⁰³

Interestingly, a pope that does miracles and who works with the Great Monarch ("the Beast") is expected to "recover the kingdom of Jerusalem" according to a 12th century Greco-Roman prophecy.⁴⁰⁴

If the final Antichrist, probably some type of "antipope," moves to Jerusalem to aid "world peace" (such as related to the Jewish/Palestinian situation), it would seem to make sense that he comes to Jerusalem prior to the King of the South fighting the King of the North (Daniel 11:40). This move may give the Arab world major cause for concern. Jesus warned of a coming time when Jerusalem would be "surrounded by armies" (Luke 21:20) and "trampled by Gentiles" (vs.24), which parallels a similar warning in Revelation 11:2.

The Bible says an abomination will be set up in "the holy place" in Jerusalem by supporters of the Beast. Daniel 11:31, is the signal for the Philadelphians to flee per Jesus' comments in Matthew 24:15-16 and Revelation 3:10 prior to the start of the Great Tribulation (Matthew 24:21).

Even *The Catholic Encyclopedia* seems to tie Jesus' statements in Matthew 24:15 to Daniel 11:31.⁴⁰⁵ However, it is somewhat unclear about what that connection actually means.

32 Those who do wickedly against the covenant he shall corrupt with flattery; but the people who know their God shall be strong, and carry out *great exploits*.

"Those who do wickedly against the covenant" would appear to be those who persecute/harm the faithful church (those of "the covenant"), the other nations that support the King of the North – possibly former Christians who forsook the truth – and/or perhaps some of the Laodicean Christians (Revelation 3:14-21). If so, this could represent a major separation between the Philadelphians and the Laodiceans (who are "lukewarm" Christians) – which must happen close to that time. Many will betray brethren (cf. Mark 13:12).

Here is the *Douay Rheim's* translation and related comments on this verse:

32 And the impious against the testament shall dissemble fraudulently: but ^(m) the people that knoweth their God, shall obtain, and shall doe.

^(m) even in the hottest persecution of Antiochus, Nero or Antichrist some shall constantly confess true religion.⁴⁰⁶

It looks like that the end-time Philadelphian Christians (Revelation 3:7-13) are the ones who are strong and will carry out something important.

The 19th century Methodist theologian Adam Clarke, in his commentary, identifies the people as follows:

But the people that do know their God

The genuine Christians.

Shall be strong

Shall be strengthened by his grace and Spirit.⁴⁰⁷

The words *great exploits* in the NKJV do not literally appear in the Hebrew text. The NJB says that they will “take action” and the LSV “worked” (presumably supporting God’s work). Perhaps these faithful Christians will display the types of miraculous signs that Jesus mentioned in Mark 16:15–18, Peter in Acts 2:17–18, and/or the Apostle Paul in 1 Corinthians 12:1–11. These people truly know their God, keep the word of Christ, and have works that are approved, and thus are Philadelphian Christians – as the Bible states of the Philadelphian Christians:

⁸ I know your works. See, I have set before you an open door, and no one can shut it; for you have a little strength, have kept My word, and have not denied My name (Revelation 3:8).

Joel 2:28–31 also suggests a future fulfillment of Daniel 11:32 as those prophesying then may be part of those who are strong and who carry out the exploits and these may occur when the Philadelphians are somewhat fleeing (cf. Revelation 12:14–17).

11:33 And those of the people who understand shall instruct many; yet *for many* days they shall fall by sword and flame, by captivity and plundering.

Those who **understand and instruct many** are those who faithfully do the work of God. This would seem to mainly be the Philadelphia portion of the Church. Some will be killed

and will also possibly have their houses or other buildings burned down.

This may occur for a relatively short period of time. It needs to be understood that the expression “for many” is not in the original Hebrew before the word “days.” The MKJV (Modern King James Version), the LITV (Literal Translation of the Holy Bible), and also the DRB did a better job with this verse as shown below:

³³ And those who understand among the people shall teach many; yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by exile, and spoil, for days. (Daniel 11:33, MKJV)

³³ And those who understand among *the* people will instruct many, yet they will stumble by the sword and by flame, by exile and spoil *for* days. (Daniel 11:33, LITV)

³³ And the learned in the people shall teach very many: and they shall fall by sword, and by flame, and by captivity, and by spoil of days. (Daniel 11:33, DRB)

Thus, there will be some **days** where intense persecution of the Philadelphian Christians will occur *before* they all flee and later receive supernatural protection from God, through His angels.

Regarding falling by the flame, there is also a Roman Catholic,⁴⁰⁸ as well as a Byzantine,⁴⁰⁹ prophecy that indicates members of a small sect will be burnt, possibly in at least partial fulfillment of this verse.

34 Now when they fall, they shall be aided with a little help; but many shall join with them by intrigue.

Verse 34 further suggests that some Philadelphians will suffer and be betrayed, as it is the Philadelphians that should be those of high understanding.

It should be pointed out that those suffering at this time *may* be the Philadelphians (and/or other Christians) in areas controlled or influenced by the King of the North, specifically Europe, and possibly also including Latin America. It may be that there will be a religious resurgence (cf. Revelation 13:4,8) that leads to some of God's people being killed in those lands, and even the U.S.A., etc., by self-appointed vigilantes calling themselves "Catholic" (such as one who actually called for a real crusade to begin in the 21st century).⁴¹⁰

Those who join with the Philadelphian or other Christians by intrigue look to include those having fallen away or others pretending to assist the Christians, yet secretly really supporting the King of the North. Greek Orthodox scholar H. Tzima Otto believes that some claiming Philadelphia Christian practices (she does not use the term "Philadelphia Christians," but instead calls them Sabbatians, meaning seventh-day Sabbath-keepers) are going to betray genuine Philadelphians in the future and support the Great Monarch.⁴¹¹

Daniel 11:34, itself, is consistent with the following prophecy of Jesus related to the Philadelphian Christians:

⁹ Indeed I will make those of the synagogue of Satan, who say they are Jews and are not, but lie — indeed I will make them come and worship before your feet, and to know that I have loved you. (Revelation 3:9)

Jesus loves the Philadelphians, and the Philadelphians (Philadelphia means *brotherly love*) will be further demonstrating their love for God and humanity during this time. It should be pointed out that the New Testament calls Christians 'Jews' in several places (Romans 2:28-29; Revelation 2:9,3:9). So, those who are joining by intrigue look to be the same ones warned against in Revelation 3:9. Hence, this is another connection to the Philadelphians and this persecution in Daniel.

Daniel 11:34 is a warning to the most faithful end-time Christians that while some will actually help them then, they will need to be quite cautious, as problems are likely with "many" who will seem to join them.

35 And some of those of understanding shall fall, to refine them, purify them, and make them white, until the time of the end; because it is still for the appointed time.

Verse 35 further shows problems for many of the most faithful in the Church. Because not even the most faithful are perfect, some apparently will fall and/or be persecuted, so that they can be refined (spiritually improved).

But Daniel 12:1 shows that this specific persecution will probably end in, or shortly after, verse 35. Then, probably by the beginning of Daniel 11:39 at the latest, the great tribulation will begin.

Why?

The expression translated as "the appointed time" in verse 35 is from the Hebrew word transliterated into English as *`eth*.⁴¹² It is used in both Daniel 12:1 and 11:35.

The same Hebrew word (*`eth*) is translated as “the set time” in Psalm 102:13:

¹³ You will arise and have mercy on Zion; For the time to favor her, Yes, the set time, has come.

This seems to show that these verses (Daniel 11:35 and Psalm 102:13) are for the same time. If so, this is the time when God distinguishes between the truly faithful Church (called “Zion” above), and those outside the most faithful Church (cf. Revelation 12:13-17). Perhaps this is a parallel to when God no longer had the children of Israel experience the plagues in Egypt, while the Egyptians did (Exodus 8:22).

However, one thing that is critical to notice is that verse 35 specifically shows that its activities go “until the time of the end” — **thus there must be a future fulfillment of vs. 35. And this may be a key verse to tie in with Daniel 12:1.**

The Wycliffe Bible Commentary supports that view (**bolding** in original):

Dan 12:1

At that time (cf. on Dan 11:36). At the same time as the events of 11:36–45. **Michael**. See Rev 12:7; cf. Josh 5:13–15; 2 Kings 6:15–17; Isa 37:35–36; Matt 26:53. This is Israel’s time of trouble. Every reference to it uses superlative language (cf. also Matt 24:21).⁴¹³

Yet, the above from *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary* is off a little bit.

Why?

Because the same Hebrew expression for “at that time” (*`eth*) occurs in verse 35, *not* verse 36. Anyway, somewhere

between verse 35 and 39 is apparently when Michael stands up and begins to protect the Philadelphians near the start of the Great Tribulation.

The Philadelphians apparently will flee during vs. 35, as Jesus said that His people would flee just prior to the great tribulation in Matthew 24:20-21. Jesus specified that they would escape in Luke 21:36. Jesus stated that it would be the Philadelphians who would be kept “from the hour of trial which shall come upon the whole world” in Revelation 3:10.

The Bible shows that persecution will accompany this fleeing (Revelation 12:13-15), but that those fleeing are helped (vs. 16). Because of the successful fleeing, the King of the North will stop his direct pursuit of them. The faithful will no longer be proclaiming the gospel through any major organized media effort (cf. Amos 8:11-12). The rising up of the “secret sect” some Greco-Roman writings allude to will have ended.

Greco-Roman prophecies seem to also foretell this time. It looks like the Philadelphian “sect” will be perceived to be the enemy of the Great Monarch and the antipope:

St. Francis of Paola (Born in Italy, 15th century): the Great Monarch will annihilate heretics and unbelievers ... All in all, there will be on earth twelve Kings, one Emperor, one Pope and a few Princes.⁴¹⁴

David Poreus (17th century): The Great Monarch ... will crush the enemies of the Pope ...⁴¹⁵

Thus, as far as most in the world will be concerned, the faithful Christians will have been “crushed” as heretics.

The Bible gives the following warning about the European Beast:

²⁵ He shall speak pompous words against the Most High, Shall persecute the saints of the Most High, And shall intend to change times and law. Then the saints shall be given into his hand For a time and times and half a time. (Daniel 7:25)

⁴ So they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast; and they worshiped the beast, saying, "Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with him?" ⁵ And he was given a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies, and he was given authority to continue for forty-two months. ⁶ Then he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme His name, His tabernacle, and those who dwell in heaven. ⁷ It was granted to him to make war with the saints and to overcome them. And authority was given him over every tribe, tongue, and nation. ⁸ All who dwell on the earth will worship him, whose names have not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world. (Revelation 13:4-8)

After Philadelphian Christians begin to face fierce (and sometimes deadly) persecution, the fifth seal signaling the start of the Great Tribulation will be opened with the rest of the Christians facing deadly persecutions for 3 ½ years.

Notice that both the Great Monarch and the Beast are prophesied to be warring persecutors. People will marvel. Some will believe God is on the side of this Great Monarch, because few ever expected the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies to be conquered in this century.

The Faithful Philadelphians May Dwell in Caves

Many theologians, consistent with Revelation 12:14-16, have considered that part of the true Church would flee into the wilderness during this time⁴¹⁶; and others specifically believe that this place has caves.⁴¹⁷

The late Protestant Dr. Tim LaHaye referred to a mountainous cave-filled place in Jordan called Petra and the people who flee as “believing Jews.”⁴¹⁸

It would seem that those called “believing Jews” (historically, sometimes known as Nazarene Christians) represent the faithful sect that certain mystics have improperly warned about.

Philadelphians, like other faithful, Christians have some practices considered “Jewish” as Revelation 3:7-9 and 2:9 suggests. The fact that Jesus told His followers, to “pray that your flight may not be in winter or on the Sabbath” (Matthew 24:20) also confirms this. The Bible is clear that at the time of the fleeing, even those who do not flee, but are to be persecuted “keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus Christ” (Revelation 12:17).

However, at least one Roman Catholic mystic warned in the 12th century that while those in caves seemed to be good, she felt they really were not:

Hildegard of Bingen (12th century): And fly from those who linger in caves and are cloistered supporters of the Devil. Woe to them, woe to them who remain thus! They are the Devil’s very viscera, and the advance guard of the son of perdition.

Therefore, O you My beloved children, avoid them with all devotion and with all the strength of your souls and bodies. For the ancient serpent feeds and clothes them by his arts, and they worship him as God and trust in his false deceptions ... Because they are afraid of My people, they do not openly resist these institutions of Mine, but in their hearts and their deeds they hold them as nothing. By devilish illusion, they pretend to have sanctity; but they are deceived by the Devil, for if he were to show himself to them openly they would understand him and flee him ... But because the Devil knows he has only a short time for his error, he is not hastening to perfect infidelity in his members; you, you evil deceivers, who labor to subvert the Catholic faith.⁴¹⁹

It would appear that the mystic was demonically-influenced as she is actually warning against supporting the true Philadelphian pacifist Christians (something that may happen, as some not originally with them might try to join them per Isaiah 56:8). (As far as “the Catholic faith” goes, check out our free book, online at ccog.org, titled *Beliefs of the Original Catholic Church*.)

It is the Philadelphian Christians who will be protected, yet Hildegard seems to be claiming that they are the “supporters of the Devil” (probably because they will oppose the final revised ecumenical church and because that church will have persecuted them). Because she calls them “the advanced guard of the son of perdition,” she sequentially looks to be referring to a group of people who will be protected in caves just before Christ returns.

Notice also that she specifically warns against religious people in caves who are miraculously fed.

Yet, she must not have realized that the Bible indicates that those who receive God's protection in the wilderness during the end time (Revelation 12:14-16), and are in caves (Jeremiah 48:28), are His people (Isaiah 16:1-4 possibly in Sela/Petra), will be religious (Revelation 14:12), and will be miraculously fed (Isaiah 33:15-16). Hence, the above vision does support the view that even the demons have understood about a place of protection where some people will be miraculously fed, for quite some time.

However, those associated with the King of the North will then turn their attention to the rest of her seed, the non-Philadelphian Christians (who will be a kind of "secret sect" but will try to remain hidden, most likely to avoid this persecution).

Even a commentator's note in the *Rheims New Testament* agrees that the Church goes to a wilderness desert location:

The Church shall flee as to a desert in Antichrist's time, but not decay or be unknown, no not for so short a time. ⁴²⁰

Early Greco-Roman "fathers" such as Irenaeus,⁴²¹ Hippolytus,⁴²² and Cyril⁴²³ also believed this. Hence Hildegard is once again not even faithful to Greco-Roman Catholic positions on prophetic matters.

Furthermore, notice:

Bishop St. Victorinus (3rd century): But the woman fled into the wilderness, and there were given to her two great eagle's wings ... to that ... church ... let them go to that place which they have ready, and let them be supported there for three years and six months from the presence of the devil.⁴²⁴

Thus, the idea of true Christians fleeing, being supported, and being away from the devil for 3 ½ years is consistent with both biblical and certain Roman Catholic teachings.⁴²⁵

The Greek Orthodox also tend to believe that the faithful will flee to caves in the desert/wilderness for 3 ½ years.⁴²⁶

No one should rely on Hildegard's false admonition.

Now, it should be understood that the Bible shows that those who do not flee at that time will be persecuted:

¹⁷ And the dragon was enraged with the woman, and he went to make war with the rest of her offspring, who keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus Christ (Revelation 12:17).

Thus, we see several parallels in Daniel 11:29-35 and Revelation 12:13-17. We specifically see that some will be persecuted, will flee to the wilderness, will be helped, but that Satan is not yet through (as Daniel 11:36-44 also seem to show).

The Spanish-influenced 16th century Mayan *Chilam Balam* warns that those associated with a church will be in a cave:

Son, where is the cenote? All are drenched <with> its water. There is no gravel on its bottom; a bow is inserted over its entrance. <It is> the church.⁴²⁷

The 1933 compiler of the above (J. José Hoíl) added a note stating, "Evidently a reference to a cave type of cenote."⁴²⁸

Thus, this Mayan writing is showing the church being in a cave and being drenched with water in a way seemingly

consistent with the concept of fleeing to a wilderness and avoiding the flood as shown in Revelation 12:14-16.

36 “Then the king shall do according to his own will: he shall exalt and magnify himself above every god, shall speak blasphemies against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the wrath has been accomplished; for what has been determined shall be done.

The King of the North will prosper and honor his own god, but will honor himself the most. Although there have been partial fulfillments in the past, **this would have to be at the time of the end.**

The prospering in Daniel 11:36 may also be related to Ezekiel 27 (cf. Revelation 18). If so, this would suggest that the coming European power will start prospering through trading before it begins to prosper through military conquest. Notice something that the late evangelist John Ogwyn wrote:

This European union of church and state will promise universal prosperity and will exercise worldwide economic dominance for a short while. Ezekiel 27, using the figure of the ancient commercial city of Tyre, speaks of this global economic combine which will include nations of Europe, Africa, Latin America, and Asia along with Israel and Judah (v. 17). Portions of Ezekiel 27 are paraphrased or quoted in Revelation 18 where the end-time system, called Babylon the Great, is described.

The English-speaking nations will not prosper for long in connection with this system, however. In fact, they will ultimately be overpowered and destroyed by it militarily. Prior to military attack and

occupation, devastating weather problems, combined with internal civil strife ("tumults in the midst" cf. Amos 3:9) will bring our nations to the point of internal collapse.⁴²⁹

Thus, a major trading power will prosper. Even today, the European Union is a major trading power.

It should be noted that the term translated as "Then" in vs. 36 (and the "Thus" in vs. 39) is the Hebrew word *`asah* which according to the *Interlinear Transliterated Bible* actually means "And shall do."⁴³⁰ Therefore, it may be that every act listed is not necessarily consecutive, as some (from vs. 31 to 38) may be fairly concurrent.

37 He shall regard neither the God of his fathers nor the desire of women, nor regard any god; for he shall exalt himself above *them* all. 38 But in their place he shall honor a god of fortresses; and a god which his fathers did not know he shall honor with gold and silver, with precious stones and pleasant things.

Notice that the King of the North, the ten-horned beast, will really worship himself, but will outwardly honor some type of god, perhaps including technology related to war.

Regarding "any god" in verse 37, it will probably be that the King of the North will pretend to be some type of "Catholic" until it is no longer convenient. The Beast will then turn on an unfaithful church as shown in Revelation 17:16-17.

That would seem to be consistent with the following from the Middle Ages:

S. Lazerianus, Archbishop of Cashel ... foretold that the see of Rome is 'fated to utter destruction when the Roman faith perisheth in Ireland.'⁴³¹

Yes, change in religion will happen.

Now let us look at the original KJV for Daniel 11:37-38, as it seems a bit truer to the Hebrew intent. The NKJV gives a different impression:

³⁷ Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all. ³⁸ But in his estate shall he honour the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things (Daniel 11:37-38, KJV).

The word translated both times as "regard" in 11:37 is the Hebrew word *biyn*, which essentially means to have intellectual understanding/perception of.⁴³²

Essentially, the King of the North will probably consider that the changed 'Catholic' religion should not be taken seriously internally, although, he will at first honor many of its beliefs publicly. Like Emperor Constantine did, he will probably understand that religion may be useful for political purposes, including, at first, keeping the revised Holy Roman Empire united.

Verse 38 looks to be referring to two gods. The god that his fathers did not know (possibly called the foreign god of the next verse) and the god of fortresses. It would seem that those who believe that those who profess Christ, but endorse Christians fighting in carnal warfare, are in a real sense honoring the "god of fortresses." Yet, this is something that

the original Nazarene Christians (cf. Acts 24:5) and their true spiritual descendants have never done (see also our free book, online at ccog.org, titled *Beliefs of the Original Catholic Church*).

39 Thus he shall act against the strongest fortresses with a foreign god, which he shall acknowledge, and advance its glory; and he shall cause them to rule over many, and divide the land for gain.

The “he” is the King of the North. The two Hebrew words translated as “the strongest fortresses” in verse 39 do not appear together anywhere else in the Bible.

Thus, something is unique here. Notice another translation which is similar:

³⁹ Claiming this foreign god’s help, he will attack the strongest fortresses. He will honor those who submit to him, appointing them to positions of authority and dividing the land among them as their reward. (Daniel 11:39, New Living Translation, 2007)

Who has the strongest fortresses?

Looking further down in this chapter in Daniel, we must eliminate the King of the South, because that King is not attacked until later (the next verse). We must also eliminate those in the North and East, as they do not get involved until later (verse 44).

Neither the rest of Africa nor Latin America has anything resembling “the strongest fortresses.” The strongest fortresses belong to the United States, and to a much lesser degree, its English-speaking allies. Thus, in current times, Daniel 11:39 looks to be describing when the Anglo-English-

American nations are being destroyed. Some might refer to this as WWIII.

Greco-Roman Catholic Prophecies about the Great Monarch and the Destruction of the English Peoples

Interestingly, there seem to be several Roman Catholic private prophecies that also foretell the destruction of the English-speaking peoples.

It should be noted, however, that many of the older Roman Catholic prophecies that mention the “English” were written before that area actually was called England, but was made up of territories of Anglo-Saxon-Celtic peoples. Of course, if any apply to the U.S.A., Canada, Australia, and/or New Zealand, they were not formed as we now understand them until several centuries after some of the Roman Catholic prophecies were first written. Yet, although there are errors or distortions in translations, some do seem to somehow refer to the British-American descended peoples. It would seem that they basically were intended to refer to the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic-American nations in the twenty-first century as they were not fulfilled in previous centuries.

The following Roman Catholic “private prophecies” appear to predict the destruction of the English:

St. Columbkille (597): English nobility shall sink into horrible life – wars shall be proclaimed against them, by means of which the frantically proud race shall be subdued, and will be harassed from every quarter. **The English shall dwindle into disreputable people and shall forever be deprived of power”.**⁴³³ ... **the English shall be defeated ... they shall be harassed by every quarter;** like a fawn surrounded by a pack of voracious hounds, shall be the position of the

English amidst their enemies. The English afterwards shall dwindle down to a disreputable people.⁴³⁴

Mother Shipton (died 1551): The time will come when England shall tremble and quake ... **London shall be destroyed forever after** ... and then York shall be London and the Kingdom governed by three Lords appointed by a Royal Great monarch...who will set England right and drive out heresy.⁴³⁵

Saint Edward (died 1066): **The extreme corruption and wickedness of the English nation has provoked the just anger of God.** When malice shall have reached the fullness of its measure, God will, in His wrath, send to the English people wicked spirits, who will punish and afflict them with great severity ...⁴³⁶

Saint Malachy (12th century): the English in turn must suffer severe chastisement. Ireland, however, will be instrumental in bringing back the English to the unity of Faith.⁴³⁷

Saint Cataldus of Tarentino (c. 500): **The Great Monarch** will be in war till he is forty years of age ... he will assemble great armies and expel tyrants from his empire. He **will conquer England** and other island empires.⁴³⁸

Franciscan Friar of Mount Sinai (died 1840): England will become the scene of the greatest cruelties. **Ireland and Scotland will invade England and destroy it.** The royal family will be driven out and half of the population murdered.⁴³⁹

D.A. Birch (20th century writer): It is interesting to note that the National (Government) of England is foretold

to have no role in the return of England to Roman allegiance. As a matter of fact, a number of prophecies specifically state that England will be reevangelized by the French and Irish **after England has suffered a terrible and specific chastisement**.⁴⁴⁰

*Priest Paul Kramer (2010): Zachary the Armenian Jew who converted to the Catholic Faith – published in 1854 ... there would be the war that the prophecy refers to as “the struggle of the strong, against the strong”. This empire of the north ... will go to war against North America and North America will fall and be conquered and brought into bondage ...*⁴⁴¹

Notice that Zachary said there would be a battle against the strong of North America by the empire of the north. The “empire of the north” sounds like it is referring to the “king of the north” of biblical prophecies. Certain Roman Catholic prophecies appear to be foretelling the destruction of the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic-American powers, apparently by their Great Monarch.

Notice also:

*Werdin d’ Otrante (13th century): “The Great Monarch and the Great Pope will precede Antichrist ... **All the sects will vanish. The capital of the world will fall** ... The Great Monarch will come and restore peace and the Pope will share in the victory.*⁴⁴²

In a sense, the capital of the world is the United States. Hence it seems to be the U.S.A. that Werdin d’ Otrante was referring to.

Sadly, some may well point to several of these non-Divinely inspired writings as partial justification for destroying the

United States and peoples of some of the other British-descended lands.

It is interesting to note that the Roman Catholic Saint Edward specifically states that demons will be used to punish the English peoples (whether the majority of Scots, etc., will be specifically involved or not can be debated). This would suggest, that presuming that the Great Monarch attacks them, the Great Monarch is on the side of demons. And while this is consistent with scriptures that show that the final ten-horned beast leader is influenced by demons (Revelation 16:13-14), it should give all who call themselves Roman Catholic (and others) pause to NOT support someone who is on the side of demons.

A Greek Orthodox document known as the *Anonymou Paraphrasis* of 1053 also seems to foretell of a time that the Anglos will no longer be in the area of England,⁴⁴³ but that nation was not known by that name at that time so it is not clear what is meant by it.

There also was a prophecy from a famous Roman Catholic stigmatic (a mystic with blood wounds supposedly reflective of those that Jesus suffered when nailed to the stake):

Therese Neumann (20th century): ... at the end of this century America will be destroyed economically by natural disasters. ⁴⁴⁴

Although the timing of that prophecy was wrong, it should be clear according to a variety of sources claiming Roman Catholicism, the United States and the other English-descended peoples are facing disaster—and apparently relatively soon.

While many evangelical Protestants correctly teach that the U.S.A. will be gone before Jesus' second coming (i.e. Hal Lindsey), they generally do not seem to understand how that will happen nor what scripture most clearly refers to this.⁴⁴⁵

Divided with Whom?

As far as lands being divided by this leader goes, it is likely that Mexico will regain at least some of the lands it had ceded to the U.S.A. It would seem like Russia would end up with at least part of Alaska and perhaps part of Canada. The Irish would be expected to control Northern Ireland (and perhaps other lands controlled by the United Kingdom). Mexicans, Russians, and the Irish have called for this.

Because of U.S.A. debts, a Russian professor named Igor Panarin predicted that the Europeans, Russians, Mexicans, Japanese, and Chinese may end up dividing the land of the U.S.A. in the 21st century.⁴⁴⁶ And a Roman Catholic prophecy (previously cited⁴⁴⁷) shows that the U.K. will be divided.

In the Summer of 2022, Russia's State Duma speaker Vyacheslav Volodin essentially said the U.S.A. owed it Alaska because of the cost of anti-Russian sanctions.⁴⁴⁸

Furthermore, back in WWI days, understand that Germany promised Mexico it would give it the lands ceded to the U.S.A. if it helped Germany win.⁴⁴⁹ The European Beast power would be expected to do likewise.

The Bible shows those of the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies who do not die related to the coming invasions will be scattered among the Gentiles:

¹³ And the Lord said, "Because they have forsaken My law which I set before them, and have not obeyed My

voice, nor walked according to it, ... ¹⁶ **I will scatter them also among the Gentiles**, whom neither they nor their fathers have known. And I will send a sword after them until I have consumed them.” (Jeremiah 9:13,16)

²⁵ ... Gentiles, who do not know You ... they have eaten up Jacob, Devoured him and consumed him, And made his dwelling place desolate. (Jeremiah 10:25)

¹¹ ‘Therefore, as I live,’ says the Lord God, ‘surely, because you have defiled My sanctuary with all your detestable things and with all your abominations, therefore I will also diminish you; My eye will not spare, nor will I have any pity. ¹² One-third of you shall die of the pestilence, and be consumed with famine in your midst; and one-third shall fall by the sword all around you; and I will scatter another third to all the winds, and I will draw out a sword after them. (Ezekiel 5:11-12)

¹³ I will also spread My net over him, and he shall be caught in My snare. I will bring him to Babylon, to the land of the Chaldeans; yet he shall not see it, though he shall die there. ¹⁴ I will scatter to every wind all who are around him to help him, and all his troops; and I will draw out the sword after them. ¹⁵ “Then they shall know that I am the Lord, when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the countries. ¹⁶ But I will spare a few of their men from the sword, from famine, and from pestilence, **that they may declare all their abominations among the Gentiles** wherever they go. Then they shall know that I am the Lord.” (Ezekiel 12:13-16)

So having Israelitish descendants going to the lands of the Gentiles, the final Babylon (which will be based in Europe) and the Chaldeans (the “daughter of the Chaldeans”, Isaiah 47:1-12, seems to be the false compromised end time harlot church--cf. Revelation 17:1-5; 18:23) is prophesied. This will happen during the final times of the Gentiles (cf. Ezekiel 30:3; Luke 21:24; Revelation 11:2)

Will Any Survive?

Jeremiah 30:7 teaches that some will “be saved out of” “the time of Jacob’s trouble.” But looking at Ezekiel 5 shows most will not survive. Amos 5:15 tells of a remnant from Joseph that will be saved alive.

The U.S.A. has a high population of members of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (Mormons) who live in the mountainous states such as Utah. Because the individual Mormons tend to store a large supply of food,⁴⁵⁰ it would seem that some of those who survive may head to those mountainous areas to search for food.

Similarly, the Bible shows that some few who will escape the coming captivity will go to the mountains:

¹⁶ ‘Those who survive will escape and be on the mountains Like doves of the valleys, All of them mourning, Each for his iniquity. ¹⁷ Every hand will be feeble, And every knee will be as weak as water. (Ezekiel 7:16-17)

Yet, notice also something from the prophets Amos and Jeremiah:

⁹ ‘Assemble on the mountains of Samaria; See great tumults in her midst, And the oppressed within her.

¹⁰ For they do not know to do right, ‘Says the Lord,

‘Who store up violence and robbery in their palaces.’”

¹¹ Therefore thus says the Lord God: “An adversary shall be all around the land; He shall sap your strength from you, And your palaces shall be plundered.” ¹² Thus says the Lord: “As a shepherd takes from the mouth of a lion Two legs or a piece of an ear, So shall the children of Israel be taken out Who dwell in Samaria -- In the corner of a bed and on the edge of a couch! ¹³ Hear and testify against the house of Jacob,” Says the Lord God, the God of hosts, (Amos 3:9-13)

¹⁹ They pursued us on the mountains And lay in wait for us in the wilderness (Lamentations 4:19).

The above indicates that some will be hiding in the mountains and other places in the U.S.A. (as well as others hiding among its British-descended allies) while others will be taken out as captives.

Most of the Anglo-Americans that are not killed will be made slaves. Hiding in the mountains may protect a few for a time, but it will be relatively few that survive that way for long. Zechariah 10:6 says some of the house of Joseph will return to their land because of God’s mercy.

That being said, Divine protection during the “hour of trial” is offered by Jesus to the Philadelphian Christians per Revelation 3:7-10 (see also Revelation 12:14-17).

China Prophecy, Australia, and New Zealand

Back in 2009, I came across some interesting Chinese prophecies from the Tang Dynasty (7-10th century). Notice one Chinese prophecy might hint that it involves dividing Australia and New Zealand with Europe. It states:

Population mouth takes territories south of the Yangtze river. The capital is moved again. The two divide up the territories, of which each maintains and defends.⁴⁵¹

This could be related to a deal that perhaps the Chinese will make in the future with Europe (there are some ancient Chinese prophecies that discuss arrangements with some from the West), as opposed to military conquest.

The Chinese, in reaction to a deal made by then Australian Prime Minister Julia Gillard and Barack Obama, indicated that this and the expanded military cooperation between Australia and the U.S.A. is putting Australia at risk of attack by China.⁴⁵²

China is now heavily invested in Australia and may argue that it has rights to the land. Furthermore, in recent years, the Chinese have been buying a lot of real estate in Australia, beyond purchases of mineral assets. China and Japan also have interests in New Zealand.

China may be granted lands like Australia in partial repayment for the debts that the U.S.A. owes it, as well as in full or partial payment for any debts Europe itself may incur with China (it is likely that China will loan money and/or increase investments in Europe).

It is also possible that a country like Japan may get some Anglo-Saxon-Celtic dominated land (New Zealand comes to mind) in partial repayment for the debts that the U.S.A. owes it (and also possibly Europe) since the King of the North will divide land for gain.

Perhaps it should also be mentioned that the dividing of the conquered lands also seems to be foretold in the Bible in Lamentations 4:16 and Joel 3:2.

The following Bible prophecies from Ezekiel and Isaiah seem to suggest that the Asians will also end up with peoples, which would probably include Anglo-Saxon-Celtic descended ones--like Australians and New Zealanders:

¹³ Javan, Tubal, and Meshech were your traders. They bartered human lives and vessels of bronze for your merchandise. (Ezekiel 27:13)

⁹ That You may say to the prisoners, 'Go forth,' ... ¹² Surely these shall come from afar; Look! Those from the north and the west, And these from the land of Sinim. (Isaiah 49:9,12)

Tubal and Meshech are related to Russia (Meshech with Moscow and Tubal possibly with Siberia). Javan was the son of Japheth, from whom the Mongoloid/Asian race developed. Some believe that Sinim means China, and/or others in Asia.⁴⁵³ However, Yair Davidiy has written that Sinim is an ancient Phoenician and Hebrew word for Australia referring to an unknown "land of the south" as the sage Rashi interpreted the word (which in this context could also include New Zealand).⁴⁵⁴

Having prisoners from the north and west, is consistent with them coming from the USA, Canada, and United Kingdom, whereas the Sinim reference looks to be referring to those of Australia and New Zealand.

The dividing of the Anglo-American lands for gain will prosper the European Babylonian power, which in turn, will

increase prosperity to the Asians, Africans, Latin Americans, and others consistent with the following prophecy:

² ... Babylon the great ... ³ ... all the nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and **the merchants of the earth have become rich through the abundance of her luxury.** (Revelation 18:3)

Yes, much of the world will prosper through trade for a time after the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies are conquered.

Why America and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic Allies?

Why would Europe ultimately destroy the U.S.A. and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic allies?

There are several reasons.

One would seem to be because it is the nominally Protestant and religiously diverse/independent U.S.A. that most stands in the way of the goals of a future single ecumenical religion in Europe to dominate the world. The U.K. for its Protestantism, as well as its departure from the E.U. (Brexit) will also be something that the Beast will want to punish.

Only by eliminating the vast bastions of Protestantism, independence, and other “heresies” (which several other Greco-Roman prophecies seem to show is a goal) that are present in the U.S.A. and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic allies, can such an ecumenical domination be attained in those lands.

Notice what one Roman Catholic priest has written:

*Priest G. Rossi (19th century): But boastful pride and presumption always go before a fall. With her large share of guilt, America cannot avoid her due share of punishment ... If the world is not yet entirely converted to Christianity, the blame is not on the head nor in the conscience of the Catholic Church ... Ah! wretched Protestantism shall have to answer for the loss of faith ... English schism and heresy have squandered their treasures and abused their great temporal power, not only in persecuting-the faith in Great Britain and Ireland, but also in banishing the true religion of Jesus Christ from their vast American possessions ... Their long-deserved punishment, however, is approaching from the North!*¹⁴⁵⁵

So, at least one respected Roman priest published that a northern power (the King of the North?) will punish Britain, and its descendants, including the U.S.A. and Canada, for their “pride” and Protestantism.

But why would God allow some of these nations to be destroyed, given that the Anglo-Americans have been in the forefront of distributing Bibles, helping in humanitarian matters, assisting with international disasters, etc.?

Because of their rebellion against Him (Hosea 13:16), their deep corruption (Hosea 9:9), increased sins (Jeremiah 30:14-15), their governments despising the word of God (Isaiah 30:12), and their refusal to repent (Hosea 11:5).

Related to increased sins, God states:

¹⁴ All your lovers have forgotten you; They do not seek you; For I have wounded you with the wound of an enemy, With the chastisement of a cruel one, For the multitude of your iniquities, Because your sins

have increased. ¹⁵ Why do you cry about your affliction? Your sorrow is incurable. Because of the multitude of your iniquities, Because your sins have increased, I have done these things to you. (Jeremiah 30:14-15)

As far as being apparently the first to be hit with the great tribulation, note that the Old Testament talks of “the time of Jacob’s trouble” (Jeremiah 30:7), and the New Testament clearly teaches:

⁴⁸ For everyone to whom much is given, from him much will be required (Luke 12:48).

The U.S.A. and its British-descended allies have been given much – and were given Jacob’s name (Genesis 48:16).

Yet, the three “most sinful nations” according to a 2010 BBC report based on the classic ‘seven deadly sins’ – lust, gluttony, greed, sloth, wrath, envy and pride’ – were Australia, the United States, and Canada.⁴⁵⁶ The United Kingdom was 6th on that list. And while one can argue if other nations should be ahead of them on a sin-list, the reality is that the Anglo-nations promote a lot of sin. And they accept more and more sin. As far as New Zealand goes, one study found it had the highest promiscuity rate for women in the entire world.⁴⁵⁷ The U.S.A. has also been claimed to be leading the world in gender mutilations of children.⁴⁵⁸

Consider the following about American society in 2021:

Never before in our lifetime have we seen such an abundance of widespread corruption, treacherous behavior, and blatant hypocrisy within our

government. Its ruling mandate has now become, "Do as I say, not as I do".⁴⁵⁹

More and more hypocrisy is being demonstrated by government and media leaders in the U.S.A.

The Bible, itself, teaches that the Assyrians will be used to punish "an hypocritical nation" (or hypocritical people, as the Hebrew can be translated as is done in Bishops' Bible of 1568) that refuses to repent:

⁵ O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation. ⁶ I will send him against an hypocritical nation (Isaiah 10:5-6, KJV).

¹ ... Israel ... ³ ... Ephraim ⁵ ... the Assyrian shall be his king, Because they refused to repent. (Hosea 11:1,3,5)

Christians all need to recall that when Jesus came, He clearly condemned the hypocritical religious leaders of His day (e.g. Luke 11:44), more directly than he condemned the physically more obvious sinners (Matthew 9:10-13).

This is not to say that non-Anglo-Saxon-Celtic nations do not have sin or that they will not be punished. The European Assyrians will clearly also be punished, per Isaiah 10:12-19, but the **punishment will begin first** on those who should have known better. That is, the punishment will begin on those who have claimed to live rightly, but have repeatedly failed to do so. Those who were the people of the covenant with Israel should have striven to be faithful. Those who receive biblical blessing should not be surprised when they receive biblical curses for disobedience (cf. Deuteronomy 28:1-68).

While the gospel warning message will be made fairly clear to the English-speaking peoples by the “Philadelphia Christians,” prior to Daniel 11:39, because the British-American nations are not likely to heed that warning, they will have to answer for their relative lack of response (cf. Ezekiel 33:7-9) and their survivors will be taken captive (cf. Habakkuk 2:7).

Notice something from the Sibylline oracle, followed by a comment by one who translated the passages:

But then as time rolled around there rose the Egyptian kingdom, then ... Assyria and Babylon ...

For he who rules in heaven completed earth To be a common property for all, And in all bosoms placed he noblest thought. To them alone the bounteous field yields fruit, A hundred-fold from one, and thus completes God’s measure. But to them shall also come misfortune, nor will they escape all plague.

And even thou, forsaking thy fair shrine, Shalt flee away when it becomes thy lot to leave the holy ground, and thou shalt be carried to the Assyrians, and shalt see Wives and young children serving hostile men.

Comment by *Milton Spenser Terry* (19th century): *Assyrians*.—Assyria and Babylon seem to have been often confounded together by the Sibylline authors.⁴⁶⁰

Thus, even the Sibyl seems to be warning that some who received God’s blessings will be taken away and held captive by the Assyrians, who have a relationship with Babylon. This seems to be consistent with biblical prophecies, such as several in Revelation 17 and Isaiah 10. Although some may

feel this has been fulfilled (and perhaps in ante-type it partially was), according to the Bible, something like that will happen in the future.

More about Verse 39

If the Great Monarch is the King of the North, then the many ruled over in Daniel 11:39 would seem to include those in the U.S., United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, and/or New Zealand.

Furthermore, the dividing of the land of the United States, etc., for gain, will in no small way help prosper the King of the North's empire. Many others may assist in this attack outside of those in Psalm 83. Mexico, China, and Russia, come to mind.

Destruction is Coming

Yet, instead of being worried about this coming Beast power, the U.S.A. and some of the other British-descended powers, seem to be encouraging the development of a major power in Europe.⁴⁶¹ This is something that the British-American peoples will come to later regret.

Unless the English-speaking peoples soon repent of their sins, which is very unlikely, the Bible indicates that their nations will be destroyed relatively soon (see also Hosea 8:1-13, 11:5).

The Roman Catholics also have this prophecy:

Balthassar Mas (17th century): I saw a land swallowed up by the sea and covered with water. But afterwards, I saw that the sea receded little by little and the land could be seen again. The tops of the towers in the city

rose again above the water and appeared more beautiful than before, and I was told that this land was England.⁴⁶²

The above may have several interpretations. Figuratively, it may mean that Protestant England is to be destroyed and will become “Catholic.” Or it may simply mean some type of tsunami will affect England (it probably is not related to the prophecy in Revelation about islands, as Revelation 16:20 discusses all islands, whereas this prophecy is specific to England).

Also notice this Roman Catholic prophecy:

Venerable Bartholomew Holzhauser (died 1658): England shall suffer much. The king shall be killed. After desolation has reached its peak in England peace will be restored and England will return to the Catholic faith with greater fervor than before. The Great Monarch will have the special help from God and be unconquerable.⁴⁶³

The Bible shows that the Beast will have special help from “unclean spirits” (Revelation 16:13), NOT God, and will basically be considered to be unconquerable:

³... And all the world marveled and followed the beast. ⁴ So they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast; and they worshiped the beast, saying, “Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with him?” (Revelation 13:3-4)

Notice that the military power of the Beast was something that the world will marvel, be astonished about.

Why?

Because despite fascination with war (Daniel 11:38), no one truly thought that the European Beast power had the military ability to defeat the U.S.A. with its Anglo-allies (Daniel 11:39), and then defeat the Islamic King of the South (Daniel 11:40-43). Revelation 13:3-4 also supports the idea that the Beast may rise up because of violent civil unrest in Europe.

Europe to Rise

How can Europe rise up?

Technology appears to be the key to a powerful European military. One aspect could include particle collider research. The number of colliders in the U.S.A. dwindled down to one under the Obama and Bush Administrations⁴⁶⁴ and the one that is left, “pales next to Europe’s Large Hadron Collider.”⁴⁶⁵

Europe has the leading collider in the world, CERN’s Large Hadron Collider (LHC) and Germany announced that it is planning a possibly even more advanced one called FAIR (F.A.I.R. stands for the Facility for Antiproton and Ion Research).⁴⁶⁶ 3000 scientists are reportedly involved with FAIR.⁴⁶⁷ PESCO is involved in numerous military technological projects.⁴⁶⁸

It looks like Germany’s FAIR, along with the LHC and other technology like the stellarator, will help the Europeans produce military weaponry to fulfill certain end-time prophecies. Since Revelation 13:4 is discussing what seems to be a unique type of warfare, this warfare likely includes certain high-tech weapons (such as electromagnetic pulse, neutron bombs, unique delivery systems, etc.) that will be effective for a while. The FAIR and the LHC projects are also likely to spin-off economic benefits that may help propel Europe to be (for a short while) the economic leader of the

world (cf. Revelation 18). Ultimately, the Europeans will be overcome by what appears to be a Russian-led, mainly Asian, confederation, cf. Jeremiah 50:41-43 & Daniel 11:44, possibly by exploiting some technological flaw, like creating a software virus, etc., while also amassing troops, etc.

The European Space Agency and other European programs related to technology like *Horizon 2020* are expected to bear fruit to the economic and military power of Europe shortly.⁴⁶⁹ Many projects are ongoing that will assist Europe.

Germany's stellarator nuclear fusion project and Europe's Galileo satellite system are two such projects that are starting to show a lot of potential to aid the rise of Europe in the next several years.

While the U.S.A., Australia, and others are currently worried mostly about China, the European developments will end up not being good for the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic descended lands, including England.

Here is one of Nostradamus' prophecies involving Germany and England:

Nostradamus (died 1566) Although nations talk peace, troubles brew everywhere. Militaristic parties rise in Germany and pagan cults revive. Opinions are not free and the people are not enriched. The heir to the London government is overthrown for having made too many peace protests.⁴⁷⁰

While many may believe that World War II fulfilled the above, it looks a bit more likely to be related to the next war as "opinions" are less free now than they were several decades ago – and "the heir to the London government" was not truly overthrown during WWII.

Thus, both biblical and certain Roman Catholic prophecies seem to point to the destruction of the English-speaking peoples by a Great Monarch. As well as a time leaders will falsely proclaim peace (Jeremiah 6:14,8:11; Ezekiel 13:10,16; 1 Thessalonians 5:3).

If you are in the Anglo-Saxon-Celtic-American countries (because you did not flee with “the secret sect” of the “Nazarene” Philadelphian Christians), and you see them destroyed, will you repent then? If not, what will it take for you to do that? If you are in the Arabic lands, will you repent then, or will you wait until your great leader is destroyed shortly thereafter (Daniel 11:40-43)?

If you are elsewhere in the world, will you repent then? If not, how much will it take for you to understand these events are truly coming to pass?

Who is the Foreign God?

Notice that verse 39 also mentions a “foreign god” that the King of the North will acknowledge, and advance its glory. What god might that be?

It is remotely possible that the “foreign god” in Daniel 11:39 could be some new-age god that he, the King of the North, believes in – such as one in which demons provide him with certain direct assistance. But more likely, this “god” will simply be something acceptable to the new ecumenical “Catholicism” that the King of the North will publicly promote and acknowledge.

This “new religion” will have some type of image associated with it that people will be told to worship:

¹⁵ He was granted power to give breath to the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both

... speak and cause as many as would not worship the image of the beast to be killed (Revelation 13:15).

It looks like the final King of the North will establish some type of religious order while also claiming Roman Catholicism. That is actually quite similar to Greco-Roman Catholic prophecies about a coming Great Monarch.

Notice the following from a book written by a Roman Catholic (D. Birch) who claims that he only cited Roman Catholic-approved prophecies:

St. Francis of Paula (15th Century) ... Great Monarch ... will be a Roman Emperor ... He is described as founding a new religious order. To the reader this may sound like he also become a priest. That is not the case. What happens is that he founds a religious order, part of which contains military men who take religious vows. ... **“He shall be the founder of a new religious order different from all others.** He will divide it into three strata, namely military knights, solitary priests, and most pious hospitalliers. This shall be the last religious order in the Church, and it will do more good for our holy religion than all other religious institutions.”

“... These devout men will wear on their breasts...the cross.”⁴⁷¹

This “Great Monarch” is, according to various Greco-Roman writings, prophesied to work with an end-time Pope to make the world nominally Catholic. But since he will actually change the religion, it is likely that he will take the name “Catholic” to pretend that he is faithful to that religion. And since this monarch is a warrior, obviously he will somehow honor the “god of fortresses.” And he is expected to “convert the world” according to various Greco-Roman Catholics.

Greco-Roman writings teach that this Great Monarch is also expected to upset people, including parts of the clergy:

Sister Marianne Gaultier (18th century): "... the Prince shall reign, whom people did not esteem before, but whom they shall then seek."⁴⁷²

Gameleo (possibly 16th century): **The Great Lion will arise** when the Holy See has been moved to Mentz, and a Sabinian elected Pope. **There will have been much dissension among the cardinals.**⁴⁷³

L' abbe Souffrand (1821): After the crises, there will be a General Council, despite opposition by the clergy itself.⁴⁷⁴

Cyril the Hermit (14th century): A German ruler will persecute priests and monks and do much harm to the Church.⁴⁷⁵

D. Birch (commenting after the above in his book), "Many of the prophecies speak of the fact that the Great King at first will not be well-liked, especially by the French clergy."⁴⁷⁶

This leader is probably disliked by the clergy for changes he is trying to implement. He will outwardly feign the Roman Catholic religion (cf. Daniel 11:37; Revelation 13:1-10), but will not really believe it and will work to change it.

The idea of this being a new religious order claiming to be within Roman Catholicism fits verses 38 & 39 of Daniel 11 by allowing two "gods" in a manner that would not be totally alien to some Roman Catholic practice (there have historically been many religious orders, as well as many different types of statues/icons, within Roman Catholicism).

Some Type of a Cross?

Various Greco-Roman Catholic writers have suggested, some type of cross might be associated with this religion, its leader, and/or its image. For example, even though the Bible warns against one coming with signs and wonders (2 Thessalonians 2:8-9), an Eastern Orthodox prophecy teaches about the “Great Monarch”:

Anonymou Paraphrasis (10th century): The one true King...is destined to become manifest [be revealed] ... by means ... of signs... The King will hear the voice and instructions by an Angel appearing to him ... he has foresight and is cognizant of the text of the prophecies...the name of the King is hidden [concealed] among the nations ... And the particular manner of the king’s manifestation to the public [to the world] will take place as follows: A star will appear for three days ... And a herald speaking with a very loud voice in the course of the three days will summon and unveil the hoped for one...There will become visible in the sky a ‘nebulous firmament of the sun’ ... under that image will be suspended a cross ... And the invisible herald from Heaven with his thunderous voice will say to the people: Is this man agreeable to you? At that moment everybody will be taken by fear and terror.⁴⁷⁷

This is interesting, particularly since versions of crosses have long been used in other religious traditions such as Hinduism, Buddhism, and Jainism. Here is one related reference:

[W]e find, in India, the cross bearing the same meaning as in Egypt. When with four equal arms it signifies the four elements, which cross the Hindoos

consider as eternal, and the component parts with a cross upon his breast. The cross is also found in the hands of Siva, Brahma, Vishnu, and Tvashtri ... To this day, in Northern India, the cross is used to mark the jars of sacred water taken from the Indus and Ganges, as in the northeastern parts of Africa the women impress this sign as a mark of possession upon their vessels of grain, etc. In Southern India the cross is used as an emblem of disembodied Jaina saints. The worshippers of Brahma and Buddha outnumber those of Christ; and the symbol, identified as that of our Master, was revered by the East Indians—their Lao Tse, centuries before our Lord appeared upon earth.⁴⁷⁸

I personally have seen Hindu and Buddhist temples with crosses of various types, and have noticed that large crosses are sometimes built within them. The Angkor Wat temple in Cambodia, to cite one specific example, has several. An ecumenical cross has been promoted in recent years.⁴⁷⁹

Hence, Islam and original Christianity notwithstanding, the cross seems to be an international religious symbol. Furthermore, a symbol with a cross and crescent was used for an interfaith conference between the Vatican and certain Muslims.⁴⁸⁰

Thus, because the bulk of the world will tend to accept this religion (Revelation 13:3–4,8), some type of ecumenical religious order, possibly using some type of a cross as a symbol, would seem to appeal to “foreigners” of all types. Thus, this may be what the “foreign god” will represent.

As Islam is opposed to icons, and especially any type of cross as a symbol (the Crusaders, “cross bearers” invaded them

centuries ago), Muslims will likely strongly question where all of this is leading.

Once the U.S.A. and the other 'Five Eyes' are out of the way, the King of the North will likely declare that a new world order of peace has been ushered in. That is consistent with Jeremiah 6:14-15a, which is a warning about peace statements from one associated with abomination.

The World Worships the Beast

The Book of Revelation teaches:

⁸ All who dwell on the earth will worship him, whose names have not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world. (Revelation 13:8)

The "him" above is the Babylonian European Beast.

The "prince of the power of the air" (Ephesians 2:2) has worked to set the stage for this Beast to have secular and religious supporters of various types.

Secular organizations such as the World Economic Forum (WEF),⁴⁸¹ United Nations,⁴⁸² and the Bilderberg Group⁴⁸³ all support a type of a somewhat ecumenical-interfaith-merged religion, allowing for certain differences, yet possibly writing their own holy book with artificial intelligence! ⁴⁸⁴ They all promote what could be called a 'globalist' agenda, consistent with prophecies (e.g. Revelation 17:1-5).

The European Union does as well, however, its view is that Europe should lead a coming "new world order."⁴⁸⁵

In May of 2022, World Economic Forum's founder Klaus Schwab, who is German, said he wanted to make it "clear" — "the future is built by us."⁴⁸⁶ And the WEF will work with others, like European politicians, to make that happen. WEF Chief Executive Philippe Donnet wrote related to global governance, "The world needs a leader. Europe should step up ... Global leadership, especially in socioeconomic terms, could become the shared goal of European citizens."⁴⁸⁷

Furthermore, the WEF has wanted Roman Catholic involvement and Pope Francis has, at least twice, sent Klaus Schwab pro-WEF letters.⁴⁸⁸

In 2020 Prince Charles, now king Charles III, endorsed the WEF's globalist 'Great Reset' agenda.⁴⁸⁹ There are prophecies about some of the UK (Ephraim) calling out to Germany (Assyria) after the start of the Great Tribulation (cf. Hosea 5:13). It is likely that at least one or more members of the British royal family will do this, though it will not turn out as they would have hoped (cf. Hosea 5:13b, 11:5).

Former German Defense Minister Karl-Theodor zu Guttenberg, who has pushed for more European integration, has personally spoken at a WEF meeting a decade ago⁴⁹⁰ and was still listed as part of the WEF on its website in 2023.⁴⁹¹ Herr Guttenberg also has directly called for Europe to reorganize.⁴⁹²

The WEF has called its version of a reorganized world *The Great Reset*.⁴⁹³ Many aspects of *The Great Reset* align with a future the Bible warns against. In 2021, the WEF announced it would work with Big Tech and governments to be able to control and censor the internet⁴⁹⁴ — such control would seem to contribute to the coming "famine of the word" (Amos 8:11-12).

In 2022, Klaus Schwab told the G20 (a group of the most influential/powerful government leaders of the world) that he believed that “a deep systemic and structural restructuring of our world” was needed.⁴⁹⁵ While a deep European restructuring will occur (cf. Revelation 17:12-13), it is scripturally warned against. In 2023 in a keynote speech at the World Government Summit, Klaus Schwab stated, “I agree, artificial intelligence, but not only artificial intelligence, but also the metaverse, neospace technologies, and I could go on and on ... And, who masters those technologies, in some way, will be the master of the world”⁴⁹⁶—and that is basically what he called for. Bible prophecy points to computer technologies to be used by the coming Beast power (cf. Revelation 13:16-18).

On the opening day of the WEF meeting in Davos, Switzerland in 2023, Klaus Schwab called for his supporters to “master the future,”⁴⁹⁷ which looks to be directed towards globalist totalitarianism. On the closing day of that conference “Tanja Fajon, Slovenia’s minister of foreign affairs, complained about countries placing their own sovereignty over the interests of the ‘world order,’ “⁴⁹⁸ (the loss of national sovereignty will happen at least in Europe according to prophecies such as Revelation 17:12-13).

Another 2023 WEF Davos speaker, Bilawal Bhutto Zardari (Pakistan’s Minister of Foreign Affairs) stated shortly after Tanja Fajon, “Here at WEF...there’s a lot of discussion about what the new world order will be...” and he also stated that that they needed to continue working towards, “building this new world order.”⁴⁹⁹ Having watched the video clip of this, Bilawal Zardari also looked to be calling for something consistent with the final time of the Gentiles (Ezekiel 30:3). By not appreciating warnings contained in biblical prophecies, many are pushing in a direction that will end in

death and destruction that the Bible says to flee from (cf. Revelation 18:2-19).

It needs to be pointed out that this book is not asserting that the United Nations, World Economic Forum, Freemasons, Bilderberg Group, etc. cannot do anything good. They do have many positive goals, yet also have other goals that are opposed by scripture. Despite the good, the Bible warns:

¹ Unless the Lord builds the house, They labor in vain who build it; (Psalm 127:1)

And, since these groups do not promote the supremacy of the God of the Bible, they, in that sense, labor in vain.

Related to goals of the New Age movement, consider the following:

A number of fundamental beliefs are held by many New Age followers...

- **Universal Religion:** Since all is God, then only one reality exists, and all religions are simply different paths to that ultimate reality. ...
- **New World Order** As the **Age of Aquarius** unfolds, a **New Age** will develop. This will be a utopia in which there is world government, and end to wars, disease, hunger, pollution, and poverty. People's allegiance to their tribe or nation will be replaced by a concern for the entire world and its people.⁵⁰⁰

This also sounds consistent with what the Freemasons say they want:

What is the Mission of Freemasonry? To promote a way of life that binds like-minded men in a

worldwide brotherhood that transcends all religious, ethnic, cultural, social and educational differences; by teaching the great principles of brotherly love, relief and truth; and, by the outward expression of these through its fellowship, to find ways in which to serve God, family, country, neighbors and self.⁵⁰¹

There has, historically, been friction between the Freemasons and the Vatican, though this has lessened under Pope Francis.⁵⁰² However, Freemasons, and others without strong ties to the Church of the City of Seven Hills (Rome), are likely to be among those that will one day betray it after the Beast is more fully in power and an antipope is in place consistent with Revelation 17:16-18.

An ancient Chinese prophecy states:

Beautiful people come from the West. Korea, China and Japan are gradually at peace.⁵⁰³

This prophecy seems to indicate that many Asians will accept a type of peace that will be related to a Western (European) power. The “Beautiful people ... from the West” align with the Beast and Antichrist/False Prophet that the Bible condemns.

In the 19th century, someone claimed, “if you tell a lie often enough, the people will ultimately believe it.”⁵⁰⁴ Many will believe that it is a time of peace around then, but some will correctly doubt it.

Furthermore, notice another ancient Chinese prophecy:

All negative forces are subservient ... China now has a saint. Even if he is not that great a hero.⁵⁰⁵

The conquering of the U.S.A., U.K., and Australia in WWII will make them subservient. As far as China having a saint that is not that great of a hero, this looks to be talking about the Beast.

According to a Byzantine prophet, the final (the Eastern Orthodox recognize seven previous ones) ecumenical synod council satisfies what “heretics” want:

Saint Neilos the Myrrh-Gusher (died 1592): During that time the Eighth and last Ecumenical Synod will take place, which will satisfy the contentions of the heretics...⁵⁰⁶

By satisfying “heretics,” clearly this council compromises and changes the religion, which will be at least partially called “Catholic.” If heretics are truly heretics, should their complaints be satisfied?

The Hindus have some prophecies that also seem relevant here:

For the society to climb back to its pristine glory of the golden era... even the meek would handle metal (pick arms). Whatever the poor and the downtrodden lay their hands upon would become their weapon. In the last phase of the Kali Yuga we are passing through ... Bhagwan Kalki would be a spiritual master of the highest order with the deadly combination of a wise dictator ...⁵⁰⁷

Kalki, who is considered the last Avtar or incarnation of Vishnu or the Supreme Being, who will establish the Age of Truth or Age of Purity on Earth.... As agreed by all the religious prophecies, the Awaited One will not be a man of peace like Jesus Christ or

Buddha, but a man of war who will destroy evil and establish righteousness on the earth.⁵⁰⁸

Hindus believe that human civilization degenerates spiritually during the Kali Yuga, ... which is the current epoch in which we are living, will end in 2025 CE.⁵⁰⁹

So, even the Hindus have prophecies pointing to supporting a militaristic “savior” c.2025/2026, which is around the time the Beast may rise up.

Additionally, some Hindus assert that one of European heritage could be this Kalki, claimed to be the “savior of humanity.”⁵¹⁰ It should be noted that the Roman Catholic *Ecstatic of Tours* referred to the “Great Monarch” as the “saviour” as well.⁵¹¹

Notice the following from the *Encyclopedia Britannica*: related to Buddhism:

Buddhist literature contains predictions of a certain Buddha Maitreya, who will come as a kind of saviour-messiah to inaugurate a paradisaical age on earth. Gautama the Buddha himself, the 6th-century-bc founder of Buddhism, mentioned this prediction.⁵¹²

It is possible that when the final Beast rises up promising peace, that some Buddhists will feel he could be the “saviour” that Buddhism has predicted or an ante-type predecessor to him.⁵¹³

Yet, no one should believe any “savior” claim prior to Jesus’ return.

The Bible teaches that nearly all will be deceived by this warring leader who will be accompanied by signs and lying wonders (2 Thessalonians 2:8-10) be promising peace (Daniel 8:25; 11:24), and who will actually be temporarily involved in international prosperity (cf. Revelation 18:3).

Yet, the acceptance and worship of the Beast by the world will not last.

An early major rebellion to the Beast that the Bible discusses will come from many of the Arabs and North Africans. The distrust of the proclamations by the “crusaders,” combined with the prevalence of crosses being displayed, plus Islamic understandings related to the Antichrist,⁵¹⁴ may be part of what triggers the prophesied attack from an ‘Islamic Mahdi’ who looks to be the biblical King of the South.

The King of the South, himself, looks to arise after the horsemen of famine/food-inflation and pestilences begin their rides (Revelation 6:5-8). Likely, he will promise food and prosperity as well as support for Islam.

Although not highly united, currently there is a confederation of 34 Islamic countries that have pledged to support “the Islamic nation.”⁵¹⁵ A version of that, which will be some type of confederation of nations in the Middle East and North Africa is prophesied to arise. It is expected that the two witnesses will warn what will happen to the supporters of the King of the South (cf. Ezekiel 32:15,29).

40 “At the time of the end the king of the South shall attack him; and the king of the North shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter the countries, overwhelm them, and pass through.”

The one called the King of the South in the above passage may be one with the title “Mahdi” and/or “Caliph.” While Shi’ites (and some other Muslims) consider that he will be “a saviour” and establish an Islamic world, the Bible clearly shows that the King of the North will defeat him (see also Daniel 11:41-43). Hence, all Muslims need to be on their guard and *not* accept any pan-Islamic militaristic leader — especially one who looks to rise up in this decade. He will not be God’s representative, and he will eventually lose.

Presuming that the nations of the U.S.A. and its Anglo-Saxon-Celtic allies are taken over in verse 39, there are several reasons why the King of the South may decide to launch his major attack shortly thereafter:

- 1) The fact that “the Great Satan,” a term that certain Muslims call the U.S.A., has been eliminated, the King of the South will realize that the deals made (Daniel 11:27; Psalm 83) with the Assyrian King of the North are of little or no value anymore.
- 2) Next, without the nominally Protestant U.S.A. in its way, the King of the North will try to impose its non-Muslim religion on more and more of the world. As many Arabs tend to be more devoutly religious than the Chinese and Russians, they would be more likely to get upset with this before the Kings of the East and North-East (which occurs in Daniel 11:44).
- 3) Because major parts of the Arab confederation wanted to eliminate Israel (Psalm 83 most likely refers to the nation of Israel as well as the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies), it probably will think that its actions greatly helped the Europeans accomplish this. Because of this thinking, the King of the South may become emboldened.

4) While the Bible shows that Europe will get a “great army,” it shows that the King of the South will be in charge of “a very great and mighty army” (Daniel 11:25). This will likely give the King of the South misplaced confidence to attack. Yet, it seems likely that it will be European military technology that will allow it to defeat the “mighty army” that the King of the South leads.

5) It is also likely that the King of the South will feel that the conquest of the U.S.A. and its final allies will have put a strain on the military of the King of the North. The King of the South may believe it is an ideal time to strike. This is likely, as one of the reasons that the U.S.A. may be so easy to take over is because its own military has been strained, given that the U.S.A. has been spreading its military strength quite thin in the 21st century (and several defense cuts have been proposed, some of which have been implemented, along with a focus on China/Russia being a perceived threat while thinking Europe is not a threat).

6) Increasing displays of crosses, combined with people following wonders, perhaps including apparitions claiming to be Mary (see also the book *Fatima Shock!*), will get many in the Arab lands to remember the crusades. Enough will apparently hold to some version of Islam that they will fear an attack must be made or Islam will be defeated.

7) Finally, as many of the Arab economies are dependent upon oil revenues, and many oil fields may have passed their halfway point of production by that stage (and many of the King of the South’s weapons will be of Anglo-American origins) while

the West pushes “green” and other energy sources, the King of the South may decide that there is no better time to attack.

Also note that verse 40 says this attack against the King of the South occurs “at the time of the end.” Thus, even if this had some fulfillment with Benito Mussolini or previous leaders, as some have taught, it also has a future final fulfillment at the end.

Although the King of the North is also not “a savior” for “Catholics,” notice what a Roman Catholic prophecy states:

Rudolph Gekner (died 1675): **A great prince of the North with a most powerful army will traverse all Europe, uproot all republics, and exterminate all rebels.** His sword moved by Divine power will most valiantly defend the Church of Jesus Christ. He will combat on behalf of the true orthodox faith, and shall subdue to his dominion the Mahometan Empire. A new pastor of the universal church will come from the shore (of Dalmatia) through a celestial prodigy, and in simplicity of heart adorned with the doctrines of Jesus Christ. Peace will come to the world.⁵¹⁶

If the above has a lot of accuracy (and it has certain biblical consistency with Daniel 11:40-43), it seems to also show that all (or at least some) republics are to be uprooted before the Muslim King of the South is invaded. That is consistent with the European reorganization prophecies in Revelation 17:12-13.

Furthermore, here are three similar, possibly related, private prophecies (the first is from a Syriac document) related to a leader defeating Islam:

Pseudo-Methodius (7th century): This new Muslim invasion will be a punishment without limit and mercy ... In France, people of Christians will fight and kill them ... At that same time the Muslims will be killed and they will know the tribulation ... The Lord will give them to the powers of the Christians whose empire will be elevated above all empires ... The Roman King (Great Monarch) will show a great indignation against those who will have denied Christ in Egypt or in Arabia.⁵¹⁷

Anonymou Paraphrasis (11th century): However, in the End Times ... this King ... will march to fight against the Ishmaelites.* And he will conquer them ...⁵¹⁸

St. Francis de Paul (1470): ... From your lordship shall be born the great leader of the holy militia ... These devout men shall wear on their breasts, and much more in their hearts, the sign of the living God, namely the cross ... members of this holy order. ... the Great Monarch .. .will destroy the Mahometan sect and the rest of the infidels.⁵¹⁹

* Note: The term *Ishmaelites* is a term that has been used by the Roman Catholics and Eastern Orthodox to describe Arabs, but also has been used by them to mean all Muslims.⁵²⁰

Many “Catholics” will apparently be so misled by these and similar prophecies that they will not recognize that the “great prince of the North” seems to fulfill Daniel 11:40.

Those who profess Greco-Roman Catholicism may wish to consider what their saint Jerome taught about Daniel 11:40–43:

... those of our viewpoint refer these details also to the Antichrist, asserting that he shall first fight against the king of the South, or Egypt, and shall afterwards conquer Libya and Ethiopia.⁵²¹

Hence, the idea that it is an evil power that will invade the Middle East is an older tradition than the private prophecies that some may become misled into believing.

41 He shall also enter the Glorious Land, and many countries shall be overthrown; but these shall escape from his hand: Edom, Moab, and the prominent people of Ammon. 42 He shall stretch out his hand against the countries, and the land of Egypt shall not escape.

The “he” is the King of the North. Most scholars seem to have concluded that the Glorious Land is physical Israel.

All the nations specifically mentioned in these verses are in Africa or the Middle East. Thus, other than Israel, this appears to be a taking over of Islamic lands.

Those spared look to be associated with Turkey (Edom), Jordan (Moab), and perhaps the United Arab Emirates and possibly Saudi Arabia (Moab and the prominent people of Ammon).

Now consider the following Roman Catholic prophecy about betrayal:

Nostradamus: The Great Arab shall progress well forward, But betrayed shall be by the Byzantines. (Turks).

Comment on above from Roman Catholic writer Yves Dupont: Here, we are told that Turkey will break its faith with the rest of the Arab world.⁵²²

The “Great Arab” looks to represent the Mahdi/Caliph, the final King of the South. The Turks currently control ‘Byzantium’ and have for many centuries. Hence, Roman Catholic prophecy indicates that Turkey will betray the Islamic Arabic power.

In the Bible, Daniel 11:25-26 is quite clear that close allies of the King of the South will betray the King of the South:

²⁵ “He shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the South with a great army. And the king of the South shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand, for they shall devise plans against him. ²⁶ Yes, those who eat of the portion of his delicacies shall destroy him; his army shall be swept away, and many shall fall down slain. (Daniel 11:25-26)

Presuming that Daniel 11:25-26 has a future fulfillment (and it appears to as it seems to parallel Daniel 11:40-43), there will be close allies (like Turkey, possibly the U.A.E., etc.) that will betray the King of the South according to scripture as well. Many events will not turn out well in the Arab World for a time (cf. Ezekiel 30:2-9; 32:2-16); Jeremiah 46:14-24.

Perhaps some of the Arabic peoples who are spared by the King of the North, are spared to run oil production or other activities that the Europeans believe will benefit them.

This response from the King of the North against the King of the South will effectively eliminate much called Islam.

One more verse that should be perhaps touched on in this chapter is Daniel 11:43.

43 He shall have power over the treasures of gold and silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt; also the Libyans and Ethiopians* *shall follow* at his heels.

* Note: The Hebrew word is כּוּשִׁיִּם kushîym, meaning Cushites, like from Sudan, and is not specifically a reference to the land of Ethiopia.

The “he” is the King of the North. This is the same King of the North that valued gold and silver in Daniel 11:38. Although other scriptures also show that gold and silver will have value around this time (like Revelation 9:20; 18:12,16), the Bible is clear that gold and silver will be worthless for a short time before Jesus returns (e.g. Ezekiel 7:19).

The fact that the King of the North himself will accumulate gold (and some silver) is consistent with several Byzantine (“Greek” Orthodox) prophecies of their predicted Great Monarch:

Emperor Leo the Philosopher (died 912): You will amass gold ... And you will be the leader of the surrounding nations ...

Addressed to Emperor Manuel II, Palaeologous (died 1425): The Emperor ... will discover gold and silver...

Saint Andrew Fool-for-Christ (c. 4th century): God will reveal to this king all the gold wherever it happen to lay concealed from view ...⁵²³

One side note is that, in Egypt, major gold deposits were found in 2006 ⁵²⁴ and the government announced increasing investment in gold mining in 2022. ⁵²⁵ This is relevant as it does suggest that Egypt seemingly has enough gold that a

foreign power could be interested in taking/using it as Bible prophecy teaches.

Since many are now questioning the role of the U.S.A. dollar as the world's reserve currency, more are looking into other currencies as well as gold.

Gold will set records in U.S. dollar terms.

In 2017, I also published that last statement in my book related to Donald Trump, and it did hit records in July and August in 2020.⁵²⁶ Now, despite having ups and downs, gold will set further records in U.S. dollar terms in the relatively near future.

It has been asserted that:

The only replacement for fiat {currency} is a currency credibly backed by gold.⁵²⁷

Although the above can be debated, the reality is after the elimination of the U.S.A. and the crash of its dollar, the world will want something more stable than unbacked currency. Thus, it is likely that some type of gold-backed currency will emerge as the preferred reserve currency in the world.

It has long been reported that various nations around the world are already in the process of accumulating gold to one day overthrow the U.S. dollar—and that the “U.S. is unprepared for this strategic alternative to dollar dominance.”⁵²⁸ Various steps were also taken in 2022.⁵²⁹

When the U.S. dollar totally collapses people all around the world will consider that even if the euro (or something similar) is strong, having a more gold-backed currency would be safer.

The collapse of the U.S.A. dollar will shake a lot of the world's confidence in non-gold backed currencies. The Europeans do not have to have a perfect currency, only one that is perceived to be in better shape than the U.S.A. dollar or various other currencies.

Having the European power acquiring more gold to back the Euro or possibly another future European currency (that might potentially replace the Euro or even a basket of currencies) may greatly increase European credibility, prosperity, and influence around the globe, even if the backing is only implied.

The debt accumulation policies of the Obama-Biden and the Trump-Pence Administrations, which were a massive acceleration of the previous policies of the Bush Administration, have to a large degree been continued by a Biden-Harris Administration.

The increases in America's debt are leading the world into the time when something other than the U.S. dollar will be valued as its reserve currency.

The U.S.A. and its dollar are at serious risk.

Ezekiel 5:4 seems to show that after the U.S.A. and its British-descended allies are eliminated, fire will spread to "all the house of Israel." Amos 6:3-7 also shows captivity coming to remaining Israelites after the house of Joseph gets afflicted. Thus, all the "lost tribes" will be affected.

This would happen after the fulfillment of Daniel 11:39.

10. The End of the European Beast and Opposition

In the previous chapter, the rise of the European King of the North Beast power, his attack against the strongest fortresses of the USA, and his coming destruction of the King of the South in the 11th chapter of Daniel were discussed.

It will not only be the Middle East and North Africa that will turn against the King of the North, Asia will as well. This could possibly be called WWIV.

In the last verse of Revelation 8 (verse 13) the word woe is repeated three times and is later connected to three angels and three trumpet blasts which correspond to the blowing of the 5th, 6th, and 7th trumpets.

The first woe (5th trumpet) is described in Revelation 9:1-11. It involves a demonically-led force which causes torment (perhaps involving a plague of germ or chemical warfare) for those not having the seal of God (Revelation 9:4) – thus those of the 144,000 who were sealed in Revelation 7:4 are not tormented by this.

This woe looks to involve at least some of the European King of the North's military and is consistent with something from Daniel:

⁴⁴ But news from the east and the north shall trouble him; therefore he shall go out with great fury to destroy and annihilate many. (Daniel 11:44)

Looking at this verse, what could be north and east of the European Beast power?

Russia, for one, which is both in Europe and Asia. Daniel suggests that it, and some of its allies, will face some of the fury of the King of the North as part of the first woe.

Despite some erroneous claims, Russia, itself, is NOT the prophesied “King of the North,” but it is prophetically pointed to as the power of “the far north” (cf. Ezekiel 38:6, 39:1-2).

Going on from the first woe comes the second woe:

¹² One woe is past. Behold, still two more woes are coming after these things.

¹³ Then the sixth angel sounded: And I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God, ¹⁴ saying to the sixth angel who had the trumpet, “Release the four angels who are bound at the great river Euphrates.” ¹⁵ So the four angels, who had been prepared for the hour and day and month and year, were released to kill a third of mankind. ¹⁶ Now the number of the army of the horsemen was two hundred million; I heard the number of them. ¹⁷ And thus I saw the horses in the vision: those who sat on them had breastplates of fiery red, hyacinth blue, and sulfur yellow; and the heads of the horses were like the heads of lions; and out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and brimstone. ¹⁸ By these three plagues a third of mankind was killed — by the fire and the smoke and the brimstone which came out of their mouths. ¹⁹ For their power is in their mouth and in their tails; for their tails are like serpents, having heads; and with them they do harm.

²⁰ But the rest of mankind, who were not killed by these plagues, did not repent of the works of their

hands, that they should not worship demons, and idols of gold, silver, brass, stone, and wood, which can neither see nor hear nor walk. ²¹ And they did not repent of their murders or their sorceries or their sexual immorality or their thefts. (Revelation 9:12-21)

Such a massively large army was not possible to be put together when Jesus had John pen the Book of Revelation in the 1st century. In the 21st century, however, it is possible, and that army would be expected to include Chinese, Indian, Russian, and other Asian peoples.

The European Beast empire will not last, but will fear what is coming.

Notice also the following from the Hebrew scriptures:

² ... A people come, great and strong, The like of whom has never been; Nor will there ever be any such after them, Even for many successive generations.

³ A fire devours before them, And behind them a flame burns; The land is like the Garden of Eden before them, And behind them a desolate wilderness; Surely nothing shall escape them. ⁴ Their appearance is like the appearance of horses; And like swift steeds, so they run. ⁵ With a noise like chariots Over mountaintops they leap, Like the noise of a flaming fire that devours the stubble, Like a strong people set in battle array.

⁶ Before them the people writhe in pain; All faces are drained of color. (Joel 2:2-6)

During the second woe, the 200,000,000 man army looks to tie in with Joel 2:2 which discusses some of that army's expected actions.

Before going further, understand that current projects like China's Belt and Road Initiative and Europe's Global Gateway are looking to connect Asia, Europe, and the Middle East in ways that look to be building infrastructure that a 200 million man army would use in order to get to Europe and the Middle East.

Peoples prophetically called Medes are also shown to destroy the final Babylon according to both Isaiah and Jeremiah:

¹ The burden against Babylon which Isaiah the son of Amoz saw...

¹⁷ "Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, Who will not regard silver; And as for gold, they will not delight in it. ¹⁸ Also their bows will dash the young men to pieces, And they will have no pity on the fruit of the womb; Their eye will not spare children. ¹⁹ And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, The beauty of the Chaldeans' pride, Will be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. (Isaiah 13:1, 17-19)

¹¹ Make the arrows bright! Gather the shields! The Lord has raised up the spirit of the kings of the Medes. For His plan is against Babylon to destroy it, Because it is the vengeance of the Lord, The vengeance for His temple. (Jeremiah 51:11)

The fact that there are multiple kings of the Medes indicates that powers involved in this end time confederation represent multiple governments. This would seem to include Russia, Belarus, and likely Crimea, Donbas, and

some others in Ukraine, some in Moldova, perhaps some from the nation of Georgia, and some in Iran, etc.

Anciently, "Darius the Mede" (Daniel 5:31) conquered old Babylon – modern "Medes" will help do the same to the end-time daughter of Babylon.

The following passages seem also to apply:

⁸ "Move from the midst of Babylon, Go out of the land of the Chaldeans; And be like the rams before the flocks. ⁹ For behold, I will raise and cause to come up against Babylon An assembly of great nations from the north country, And they shall array themselves against her; From there she shall be captured. Their arrows shall be like those of an expert warrior; None shall return in vain. (Jeremiah 50:8-9)

Those who believe the Bible should leave the midst of end-time Babylon by then. Certainly, the above "north country" includes Russia, but other passages clearly point to others from Asia being involved (Jeremiah 51:27-29).

Notice some of what will happen to the coming European Babylonian Beast power led by a power from the farthest parts of the earth (Russia is the nation that is the farthest east and close to being the farthest north nation):

²² Thus says the Lord: "Behold, a people comes from the **north country, And a great nation will be raised from the farthest parts of the earth.**

²³ They will lay hold on bow and spear; They are cruel and have no mercy; Their voice roars like the sea; And they ride on horses, As men of war set in array against you, O daughter of Zion."

²⁴ We have heard the report of it; Our hands grow feeble. Anguish has taken hold of us, Pain as of a woman in labor. ²⁵ Do not go out into the field, Nor walk by the way. Because of the sword of the enemy, Fear is on every side. ²⁶ O daughter of my people, Dress in sackcloth And roll about in ashes! Make mourning as for an only son, most bitter lamentation; For the plunderer will suddenly come upon us. (Jeremiah 6:22-26)

⁴¹ “Behold, a people shall come from the north, And a great nation and **many kings** Shall be raised up **from the ends of the earth**. ⁴² They shall hold the bow and the lance; They are cruel and shall not show mercy. Their voice shall roar like the sea; They shall ride on horses, Set in array, like a man for the battle, Against you, O daughter of Babylon.

⁴³ “The king of Babylon has heard the report about them, And his hands grow feeble; Anguish has taken hold of him, Pangs as of a woman in childbirth. (Jeremiah 50:41-43)

The “great nation” from the “farthest parts of the earth” includes Russia. There are also nations that will be confederate with it. Those would also include China and other nations in Asia, and particularly in the Far East. The “Daughter of Babylon” Jeremiah referred to is not ancient Babylon, but the end-time European power. The “kings ... from the ends of the earth” seem to include South Africa and India, which are BRICS nations which have also conducted military drills with Russia and China.⁵³⁰ Some nations in South America may also be involved as they seem to be part of the “ends of the earth.” Consider that Brazil and Russia already have a variety of military agreements.⁵³¹ When the “daughter of Babylon” is in the process of falling, many will

abandon supporting it. Jeremiah 50 is part of the second woe.⁵³²

The second woe, according to scripture, ends 3 ½ days after the two witnesses are killed per Revelation 11:7-14. That is quickly followed by the third woe and the blowing of the 7th trumpet (Revelation 11:14-15).

Jesus returns with this trumpet (1 Thessalonians 4:16) which is also the last trumpet when Christians rise up (cf. 1 Corinthians 15:51-52). While that is comforting for Christians (1 Thessalonians 4:18), this angers the nations (Revelation 11:15-18).

So, the nations that gathered in Armageddon to fight the forces of the Beast, despite issues between them, will unite to fight Jesus, Himself! This is also described in Zechariah 14 and Joel 3.

The third woe releases the seven last plagues (Revelation 15:1), with victorious Christians then pictured on the sea of glass (Revelation 15:2).

During the third woe, when God sends corrective punishments, because the non-Christians refused to repent:

⁹ And men were scorched with great heat, and they blasphemed the name of God who has power over these plagues; and they did not repent and give Him glory. (Revelation 16:9)

Notice something else that happens during this third woe:

¹² Then the sixth angel poured out his bowl on the great river Euphrates, and its water was dried up, so that the way of the kings from the east might be

prepared. ¹³ And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs coming out of the mouth of the dragon, out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. ¹⁴ For they are spirits of demons, performing signs, which go out to the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty.

¹⁵ "Behold, I am coming as a thief. Blessed is he who watches, and keeps his garments, lest he walk naked and they see his shame."

¹⁶ And they gathered them together to the place called in Hebrew, Armageddon. (Revelation 16:12-16)

Forces from Asia, Africa, Europe, Latin America, the Caribbean would be expected to gather related to 'Armageddon' as "the whole world" (Revelation 16:13-16) will be involved.

Furthermore, note that Armageddon is the gathering place, but is not shown to be where a major battle is about to take place.

This world's two great military powers — ready to fight each other for world domination — will be suddenly confronted by what they conceive to be, in their deceived minds, a common "enemy" — the returning Jesus Christ! ⁵³³

"And the nations were angry..." declares Revelation 11:18. Men will not want to submit to God's rule! Instead, they will seek to destroy Jesus Christ — whom they will regard, falsely, as the Antichrist — and his angelic armies from heaven who accompany him to Jerusalem.

Instead of fighting each other, the Beast and the kings of the east will join forces — to "make war with the Lamb" (Rev. 17:14).

From the staging ground or mustering area of Armageddon the world's armies will move to confront Jesus Christ himself.

Where will that climactic battle be fought? ... Joel 3:1-2, 9-14. ... The battle, involving "all nations," will take place in the valley of Jehoshaphat! This deep valley or ravine borders Jerusalem on the east, between the city and the Mount of Olives ... Today it is more commonly known as the Kidron Valley.⁵³⁴

As it turns out, Jehoshaphat means "Yahweh judged." Anyway, the unrepentant nations of this world will be judged there by God for their rebellion and disobedience!

That said, why would various ones wrongly think that the returning Jesus is the final Antichrist? There are basically two reasons. The first is that the world, in general, does not know the beliefs of the original Christian church (details are in our free book, online at ccog.org, titled *Beliefs of the Original Catholic Church: Could a remnant group have continuing apostolic succession?*). Why would that matter? Well, there are numerous Greco-Roman Catholic writings that teach that the Antichrist will hold to those original beliefs.⁵³⁵

The second is that there are Greco-Roman Catholic prophecies that teach that the Antichrist wins the battle associated with Armageddon. Notice two:

Venerable Maria of Agreda (died 1665) ... the kings will send armies to the Holy Land, but the Antichrist will slay them all.

Anne Catherine Emmerich (died 1824) ... Antichrist will fight a successful battle at Mageddo in Palestine after which seven rulers, from fear, will subject themselves to Antichrist and he will thereafter become lord of the world ⁵³⁶

Hence, many will be deceived to fight against Jesus!

Going back to Revelation 16, we see that God will also issue corrective punishment to nearly all of humanity after Babylon (the European Empire) falls:

¹⁷ Then the seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air, and a loud voice came out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, "It is done!" ¹⁸ And there were noises and thunderings and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such a mighty and great earthquake as had not occurred since men were on the earth. ¹⁹ Now the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell. And great Babylon was remembered before God, to give her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of His wrath. ²⁰ Then every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. ²¹ And great hail from heaven fell upon men, each hailstone about the weight of a talent. Men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail, since that plague was exceedingly great (Revelation 16:17-21).

Notice that the islands are moved and mountains are basically gone sometime after God allows a massive earthquake. Islands and coastal regions will be filled with

fearful people as the seas and the waves will roar per Jesus (Luke 21:25-26), before the islands fled (Isaiah 11:11 refers to remnants of people being on islands after this event, but likely most on them will die).

Sadly, the nations will be angry and fight against Jesus when He returns to set up the glorious kingdom of God:

¹⁶ And the twenty-four elders who sat before God on their thrones fell on their faces and worshiped God, ¹⁷ saying:

“We give You thanks, O Lord God Almighty, The One who is and who was and who is to come, Because You have taken Your great power and reigned. ¹⁸ The nations were angry, and Your wrath has come, And the time of the dead, that they should be judged, And that You should reward Your servants the prophets and the saints, And those who fear Your name, small and great, And should destroy those who destroy the earth.” (Revelation 11:16-18)

^{19:19} And I saw the beast, the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against Him who sat on the horse and against His army. ...

²¹ And the rest were killed with the sword which proceeded from the mouth of Him who sat on the horse. And all the birds were filled with their flesh. ...

^{20:4} And I saw thrones, and they sat on them, and judgment was committed to them. Then I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for their witness to Jesus and for the word of God, who had not worshiped the beast or his image, and had not received his mark on their foreheads or on their hands. And they lived and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. ⁵ But the rest of the dead did not live

again until the thousand years were finished.
(Revelation 19:19,21, 20:4-5a)

The Bible says Jesus will save the world when He establishes the Kingdom of God (2 Timothy 4:1; 1 Corinthians 15:24, 50). Otherwise, all flesh would be destroyed (Matthew 24:22).

Notice the following:

¹¹ For as the sash clings to the waist of a man, so I have caused the whole house of Israel and the whole house of Judah to cling to Me,' says the Lord, 'that they may become My people, for renown, for praise, and for glory; but they would not hear.' (Jeremiah 13:11)

God wants all humans, everywhere to repent (Acts 17:30), but the bulk of the tribes of Israel have been unwilling to do so.

Those nations who gathered at Armageddon, will fight against Jesus and be defeated (Revelation 19:11-21).

Towards the end of that battle, the following happens to the King of the North Beast and the Antichrist False Prophet:

⁴⁵ And he shall plant the tents of his palace between the seas and the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and no one will help him. (Daniel 11:45)

²⁰ Then the beast was captured, and with him the false prophet who worked signs in his presence, by which he deceived those who received the mark of the beast and those who worshiped his image. These two were cast alive into the lake of fire burning with brimstone. (Revelation 19:20)

Jesus will come to then establish the millennial kingdom of God on the earth (Revelation 11:15). That is very good news.

That being said, after the coming millennial reign, God has a glorious and fantastic plan for the vast bulk of humanity that will “live again” in the age to come (cf. Hebrews 6:5, see also the free book, online at ccog.org, *Universal OFFER of Salvation, Apokatastasis: Can God save the lost in an age to come?*). This will benefit those of the whole house of Israel as well as Gentiles.

God’s plan of salvation includes people of all races and ethnicities (Luke 13:29; cf. Revelation 7:9). It is not limited to descendants of Israel or any other ethnicity (cf. Colossians 3:11).

11. Concluding Comments

The Bible has many prophecies that are pertinent for the differing peoples in the 21st century. Many of those prophecies are tied to various warnings. Knowing which nations correspond to the biblical warnings may help motivate more to act on biblical prophecies as well as take scripture more seriously.

Blessings (Deuteronomy 28:1-13) and cursings (e.g. Deuteronomy 28:15-57) were prophesied in the Bible. Those descendants of Jacob/Israel who enjoyed the blessings are subject to the curses – difficulties will come!

Notice also the following:

¹⁹ For the Lord brought Judah low because of Ahaz king of Israel, for he had encouraged moral decline in Judah and had been continually unfaithful to the Lord. (2 Chronicles 28:19)

Many leaders have been encouraging biblically-moral declines in the world, despite such warning messages.

Europe, itself, will reorganize and a European Beast will be granted power (Revelation 17:12-13). There will be signs and lying wonders that the vast majority of people will fall for (2 Thessalonians 2:8-10). Many non-biblical prophecies are part of Satan's plan to deceive people in the end times – do not accept any prophecies that are in conflict with the Bible.

Understand that it is prophesied that “evil men and impostors will grow worse and worse, deceiving and being deceived” (2 Timothy 3:13) and all those without “the love of the truth” will be deceived (2 Thessalonians 2:9-11).

Biblical truths and real facts matter.

Even though he does not think he wants to (Isaiah 10:7), the coming European Beast will conquer the U.S.A. (Daniel 11:39) and its British-descended allies (cf. Daniel 8:24-25; Isaiah 17:3). He will also defeat a coming confederation of nations in the Middle East and North Africa. In his wake, fire will come upon the remaining 'lost tribes' (Ezekiel 5:4) and captivity will come to the remaining Israelites after the house of Joseph gets afflicted (Amos 6:3-7).

A Russian-led power with multiple millions of Asian troops will defeat the European power (Jeremiah 50:41-43).

Around this time, the fullness (or "full number" as the NIV, NLT, BSB, CEV, GNT, HCSV, ISV, and NET Bible render it) of the Gentiles come into the faith:

²⁵ For I do not desire, brethren, that you should be ignorant of this mystery, lest you should be wise in your own opinion, that blindness in part has happened to Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in. ²⁶ And so all Israel will be saved, as it is written:

"The Deliverer will come out of Zion, And He will turn away ungodliness from Jacob; ²⁷ For this is My covenant with them, When I take away their sins." (Romans 11:25-27)

Gentiles are being called in this age and will be a factor in others from Israel later being saved. In Romans 9:28, unlike Paul's statement about the fullness of the Gentiles, Paul wrote that only a remnant of the descendants of Israel will be saved in this age.

Jesus will return (Revelation 11:15), but the nations of the world at that time (Revelation 11:18) will fight a losing battle against Him and “His army” (Revelation 19:14-21).

Yet, Jesus is the prince of peace (Isaiah 9:6). Jesus will establish the millennial kingdom of God (Revelation 20:4), take over the throne of David, and peace will come:

⁷ Of the increase of His government and peace There will be no end, Upon the throne of David and over His kingdom, To order it and establish it with judgment and justice From that time forward, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this. (Isaiah 9:7)

⁹ They shall not hurt nor destroy in all My holy mountain, For the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord As the waters cover the sea.

¹⁰ “And in that day there shall be a Root of Jesse, Who shall stand as a banner to the people; For the Gentiles shall seek Him, And His resting place shall be glorious.” (Isaiah 11:9-10)

The descendants of the “whole house of Israel” will then have property adjacent to the holy section of God’s city (Ezekiel 45:6). There will be highways connecting the Gentiles to Israel (cf. Isaiah 11:16, 19:23-24, 35:8).

“Scripture cannot be broken” (John 10:35). The biblical prophecies outlined in this book will come to pass.

Nations need national repentance to delay their coming destruction and/or plagues (cf. Daniel 4:27).

Yet, while national repentance for the world's nations seems unlikely (cf. Hosea 11:5), personal repentance is possible (1 Timothy 2:4; Acts 2:38) to those God will call (John 6:44) in this age. ALL others will be given an opportunity for salvation in the age to come (Matthew 12:31-32; John 7:37):

29 They will come from the east and the west, from the north and the south, and sit down in the kingdom of God. 30 And indeed there are last who will be first, and there are first who will be last. (Luke 13:29-30)

People of all races, ethnic backgrounds, and languages are going to be saved (cf. Revelation 7:9-11): whether Gentile or Israelites (Galatians 3:26-29). God made people of various colors and ethnicities to be part of the one body (Romans 12:4-5; 1 Corinthians 12:12-14) and learn various lessons, so all who will accept God's ways will be able to give love in a unique way to make eternity better for themselves and all others in the Kingdom of God (see also our free online book, *The MYSTERY of GOD's PLAN: Why Did God Create Anything? Why Did God Make You?*).

God's loving plan will come to pass (Isaiah 46:10)—God is longsuffering to give all an opportunity for repentance (2 Peter 3:9). For more information on God's plan of salvation, please see our free documented book, online at ccog.org, titled *Universal Offer of Salvation*.

Jesus also offers physical protection to the Philadelphian Christians (Revelation 3:7-13; Revelation 12:14-16) "from the hour of trial which shall come upon the whole world" (Revelation 3:10), also known as the "great tribulation" (Matthew 24:21). The great tribulation is expected to start within a decade.

Pray (1 Timothy 2:1-3; Matthew 6:9-13; Colossians 4:2). You do not have to have happen to you what will happen to the unrepentant (Luke 21:36).

Those who consider themselves Christians should heed Jesus' and the Apostle Paul's admonitions to watch world events (Mark 13:33-36; 1 Thessalonians 5:3-6), pray for God's kingdom to come (Matthew 6:10), support the end-time Philadelphia work (Revelation 3:7-13), and pray to be accounted worthy to escape various events that are certain to come to pass (Luke 21:36).

Christians need to realize that "the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy" (Revelation 19:10).

God is clear that He makes prophetic statements and causes them to be fulfilled:

⁹ Remember the former things of old, For I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like Me, ¹⁰ Declaring the end from the beginning, And from ancient times things that are not yet done, Saying, 'My counsel shall stand, And I will do all My pleasure,' ¹¹ Calling a bird of prey from the east, The man who executes My counsel, from a far country. Indeed I have spoken it; I will also bring it to pass. I have purposed it; I will also do it. (Isaiah 46:9-11)

Fulfilled prophecy is part of the proof that God exists and should be real to your life EVERYDAY! Only the true God can make predictions and ALWAYS make them come to pass! Prophecies for the tribes of Israel and those for the Gentiles have been, and will, come to pass. Many within the next decade.

³ Woe to you who put far off the day of doom, (Amos 6:3)

Believe the Bible, “let God be true but every man a liar” (Romans 3:4), do not let the scoffers prophesied for the last days deceive you (2 Peter 3:3-9).

Do not despise prophecies! (1 Thessalonians 5:20)

Endnote Citations

- ¹ Brackney WH. Historical Dictionary of Radical Christianity. Scarecrow Press, 2012, p. 61
- ² Giles JA, editor and translator. The Works of Gildas and Nennius. James Bohn, 1841, p. 22
- ³ Cowan EJ. Myth and Identity in Early Medieval Scotland. The Scottish Historical Review, Vol. 63, No. 176, Part 2, Oct., 1984, pp. 123-124
- ⁴ Sadler S. RIGHTS of the KINGDOM: OR, CUSTOMS Of our ANCESTORS. London, 1682, p. 35
- ⁵ Ibid, p. 106
- ⁶ Martin W. The Kingdom of the Cults. Baker Books, 2003, p. 518
- ⁷ What Are the Types of Human Races? Reference.com, March 28, 2020
- ⁸ Walvoord JF. The Prophecy Handbook. Victor Books, Wheaton (IL), 1990, pp. 31-33
- ⁹ Ibid, pp. 32-33
- ¹⁰ Jacobs J. Anglo-Israelism. In: Jewish Encyclopedia. Funks and Wagnalls, 1901, pp. 600-601
- ¹¹ The Lost Tribes of Israel. Catholic Answers, 2004
- ¹² Reid G. Captivities of the Israelites. The Catholic Encyclopedia, 1908
- ¹³ Commentary on Hosea, chap, i., cited in Savile BW. Fulfilled Prophecy, in Proof of the Truth of Scripture. 1882, p. 36
- ¹⁴ Reid G. Captivities of the Israelites. The Catholic Encyclopedia, 1908
- ¹⁵ Barber M. The Lost Tribes of Israel and the Book of Revelation. St. Paul Center for Biblical Theology, August 19, 2019
- ¹⁶ Calafell F, et al. Genetics and Population History of Central Asia. In: Archaeogenetics: DNA and the population prehistory of Europe. Cambridge, 2000, p. 260
- ¹⁷ Spencer MW. THE MISSING LINKS OR THE ANGLO-SAXONS, THE TEN TRIBES OF ISRAEL, Volume 1. Holliswood Press, 1901, pp. 179-180
- ¹⁸ Apartian D. The French-Speaking Peoples In Prophecy. 1961, 1967; translated into English by Carol Kalin in 1975
- ¹⁹ Spencer, p. 89
- ²⁰ Benjamin, translated by M. Adler. The Itinerary of Benjamin of Tudela Critical Text, Translation and Commentary. Oxford University Press, 1907, p. 59
- ²¹ Ostrer H. Legacy: A Genetic History of the Jewish People. United States, Oxford University Press, 2012, p. 112
- ²² Watson J. Religious Thoughts. IUniverse, 2014, pp. 41-42
- ²³ Tabor J. WERE THE "LOST TRIBES" EVER REALLY LOST? in The Lost Tribes of Israel--Selected Writings. Freetoshare Publications, 2011, p. 13
- ²⁴ Deguilloux MF, Mendisco F. Ancient DNA: A Window to the Past of Europe. Human Heredity, Vol. 76, No. ¾, 2013, p. 122
- ²⁵ Feldman M, et al. Where Asia meets Europe - recent insights from ancient human genomics, Annals of Human Biology, 2021, 48:3: 191-202

-
- ²⁶ Krause J, Trappe J. A Short History of Humanity – A New History of Old Europe. Originally published in German. Random House 2021, p. 18
- ²⁷ Malaspina P, et al. Human Y-chromosomal Networks and Pattern of Gene Flow in Europe, West Asia and North Africa. In: Archaeogenetics: DNA and the population prehistory of Europe. Cambridge, 2000, p.165
- ²⁸ Rickards O, et al. MtDNA Variability in Extinct and Extant Populations of Sicily and Southern Italy. In: Archaeogenetics: DNA and the population prehistory of Europe. Cambridge, 2000, pp. 175, 179
- ²⁹ Kidd KK, et al. Nuclear Genetic Variation of European Populations in a Global Context. In: Archaeogenetics: DNA and the population prehistory of Europe. Cambridge, 2000, p. 109
- ³⁰ Falk R. Genetic markers cannot determine Jewish descent. *Frontiers in Genetics* 5(462) 2014:462
- ³¹ Helgason A, et al. Sampling Saturation and the European MtDNA Pool: Implications for Detecting Genetic Relationships Among Populations. In: Archaeogenetics: DNA and the population prehistory of Europe. Cambridge, 2000, p. 285
- ³² Waldman S, et al. Genome-wide data from medieval German Jews show that the Ashkenazi founder event pre-dated the 14th century. *Cell*, November 30, 2022
- ³³ Rutherford A. How Accurate Are Online DNA Tests? *Scientific American*, October 15, 2018
- ³⁴ Ostrer, pp. 111-113
- ³⁵ Hutchinson R. Book review: The Highland Clans, by Alistair Moffat. The Scotsman – April 26, 2010. <http://news.scotsman.com/features/Book-review-The-Highland-Clans.6223804.jp> viewed 04/26/10
- ³⁶ The DNA of Western European Nations. Canadian British-Israel Association. <http://www.british-israel.com/dna-and-british-israel.html> accessed 06/20/22
- ³⁷ Sykes B, Renfrew C. Concepts in Molecular Genetics. In: Archaeogenetics: DNA and the population prehistory of Europe. Cambridge, 2000, p. 14
- ³⁸ Krause, p. 18
- ³⁹ Ibid, p. 14-15
- ⁴⁰ Haplogroup R1b (Atlantic Modal Haplotype). http://freepages.genealogy.rootsweb.ancestry.com/~gallgaedhil/haplo_r1b_amh_13_29.htm viewed 12/08/12
- ⁴¹ McNair R. America and Britain in Prophecy. Global Church of God, 1996, pp. 31-32
- ⁴² Davidiy, p. 403
- ⁴³ Davidiy, p. 495
- ⁴⁴ Helmer RG. THE BLOOD OF MANKIND – PART III THE BLOOD OF AMERICA. (http://www.helmerspoint.com/uploads/4/0/0/2/4002281/the_blood_of_mankind_iii.pdf accessed pre-2016
- ⁴⁵ Davidiy Y. The Tribes, 4th edition. Russell-David Publishers, 2011, p. 384; Spencer MW. THE MISSING LINKS OR THE ANGLO-SAXONS, THE TEN TRIBES OF ISRAEL, Volume 1. Holliswood Press, 1901
- ⁴⁶ Davidiy, p. 424-426

-
- ⁴⁷ Reich D. *Who We Are and How We Got Here: Ancient DNA and the New Science of the Human Past*. Oxford, 2018, pp. 2, 10-11; Krause, p. 27
- ⁴⁸ Krause, e.g. pp. 35-53
- ⁴⁹ E.g. comparing Genesis 1:2 to Isaiah 45:18 suggests a distance between Genesis 1:1 and verse 2. Also, in the oldest Masoretic scriptural texts there is a “gap” symbol between the first and second verse of Genesis 1, which further supports the view of a time gap between those verses. The idea of a time gap allows for the planet to be older than 6,000 years old as well as to possibly have pre-Adamic humanoids. That said, from the time Adam and Eve left the Garden of Eden to present time is slightly less than 6,000 years. See also <https://www.cogwriter.com/gap-theory-old-earth-long-days-creation.htm>
- ⁵⁰ Krause, pp. 105, 169
- ⁵¹ Bamforth B. Cation-Ratio Dating and Archaeological Research Design: Response to Harry Douglas. *American Antiquity*, Vol. 62, No. 1, Jan., 1997, pp. 121-129; Cherry J. Carbon 14 Dating: Past, Present and Future A simplified explanation. *Central States Archaeological Journal*, Vol. 56, No. 1, January 2009, pp. 28-30; Gerrard JF. Synthesis, Chronology, and “Late Roman” Cemeteries in Britain. *American Journal of Archaeology*, Vol. 119, No. 4 (October 2015), pp. 565-572
- ⁵² Cherry, pp. 28-30
- ⁵³ The Sonnini Manuscript. as cited in Goodspeed EJ. *STRANGE NEW GOSPELS*. University of Chicago, 1930, p. 85
- ⁵⁴ Pidgeon S. Chapter 29 – The last chapter of the Book of Acts. Cepher Publishing Group, July 13, 2020
- ⁵⁵ Eusebius of Caesarea: *Demonstratio Evangelica*, Book 3, Chapter 5. Translated by W.J. Ferrar. Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge. London. The Macmillan Company. New York 1920, p. 113
- ⁵⁶ Book II, — 43
- ⁵⁷ Hoeh H. *Where Did the TWELVE APOSTLES Go?* Plain Truth, May 1964
- ⁵⁸ Hippolytus. *On the Twelve Apostles*
- ⁵⁹ McNair R. *Key to Northwest European Origins*. Ambassador College Thesis, May 1963
- ⁶⁰ Apartian DK. *The French-Speaking Peoples In Prophecy*. Translated from the French by Carol Kalin in 1975. Ambassador Collage, 1961
- ⁶¹ Davidy. *The Tribes*, pp. 161-162
- ⁶² Davidy. *The Tribes*, p. 440
- ⁶³ Davidy. *The Tribes*, pp. 199-200
- ⁶⁴ Davidy. *The Tribes*, p. 217
- ⁶⁵ Davidy. *The Tribes*, p. 232
- ⁶⁶ Davidy. *The Tribes*, pp. 377,390
- ⁶⁷ Davidy. *The Tribes*, p. 403
- ⁶⁸ Davidy. *The Tribes*, pp. 432,438
- ⁶⁹ Davidy. *The Tribes*, p. 433
- ⁷⁰ Apartian D. *The French-Speaking Peoples In Prophecy*. 1961, 1967; translated into English by Carol Kalin in 1975

-
- ⁷¹ Extracted from "The Tribes" by Yair Davidiy REUBEN; <http://britam.org/reuben.html> viewed 03/04/22
- ⁷² Davidiy Y. Commentary on the book of Obadiah. <http://britam.org/obadiah.html> accessed 11/17/22
- ⁷³ Rashi on Obadiah in The twelve prophets: Hebrew text & English translation. . Abraham Cohen, ed. Soncino Press, 1948
- ⁷⁴ Gill J. Gill's Exposition of the Entire Bible. John Gill, 1746-63; The Geneva Bible. 1560, p, 373; Isaac Arbarbanel Commentary on Obadiah 20. Sefaria.org accessed 11/17/22
- ⁷⁵ Isaac Arbarbanel Commentary on Obadiah 20. Sefaria.org accessed 11/17/22
- ⁷⁶ Geneva Bible, p. 373
- ⁷⁷ Napoleon was Italian. (Hoeh H. Location of the Tribes of Israel. Herman L Hoeh © 1957)
- ⁷⁸ Apartian D. The French-Speaking Peoples In Prophecy
- ⁷⁹ Amanfo A. Making History: The Sephardi Jewish Orphans of Sao-Tome and the African -American Appropriation of their Story the African -American Appropriation of their Story Dissertation, Florida International University, March 26, 2019
- ⁸⁰ Berkowitz AE. Revealing the Hidden: Special Hanukkah Dedication of Third Temple Altar. Breaking Israel News, December 10, 2018
- ⁸¹ MacManus S. The Story of the Irish Race, A Popular History of Ireland. Irish Publishing Company, 1921, p. 8
- ⁸² Goídel Glas. Oxford Reference. Oxford University Press. Oxford University Press Copyright © 2022.
- ⁸³ Jacobs, p. 601
- ⁸⁴ Hoeh H. Location of the Tribes of Israel. Herman L Hoeh © 1957
- ⁸⁵ McNair, p. 110
- ⁸⁶ Your Bible Questions Answered. Good News, November 1963
- ⁸⁷ e.g. Mowatt D. Origin of Mankind. LifeRich Publishing, 2021
- ⁸⁸ Why is the tribe of Dan missing from the 144,000 in Revelation chapter 7? Got Questions. <https://www.gotquestions.org/tribe-Dan-missing-144000.html> accessed 11/08/22
- ⁸⁹ Lesson 28 - Feast Of Trumpets - Why World Won't End in Cosmocide. The Ambassador College Bible Correspondence Course, 1984
- ⁹⁰ Hoeh H. COMPENDIUM OF WORLD HISTORY, VOLUME 2. Ambassador College, 1969 Edition
- ⁹¹ Hoeh H. Location of the Tribes of Israel
- ⁹² Biblesoft's New Exhaustive Strong's Numbers and Concordance with Expanded Greek-Hebrew Dictionary. Copyright © 1994, 2003, 2006, 2010 Biblesoft, Inc. and International Bible Translators, Inc.
- ⁹³ Key to Northwest European Origins. Ambassador College, 1963
- ⁹⁴ Davidiy, p. 438
- ⁹⁵ Haugen E. Blessings of Babel, Chapter 20, Ethnicity: Swedes and Norwegians. De Gruyter Mouton, 2012, pp. 125-130

-
- ⁹⁶ Are Norwegians and Swedes the Same People? Get the Facts. ScandanavianFacts.com accessed 03/23/22
- ⁹⁷ Hoeh HL. LOCATION OF THE TRIBES OF ISRAEL, Herman L Hoeh © 1957
- ⁹⁸ Otten B. Asher - Walloons (Belgians) Email to COGwriter@aol.com, March 5, 2014
- ⁹⁹ Davidy. The Tribes, p. 217
- ¹⁰⁰ Hoeh HL. LOCATION OF THE TRIBES OF ISRAEL Ambassador College, 1957
- ¹⁰¹ Diab K. Did Adam and Eve Speak Dutch? Haaretz, June 23, 2014
- ¹⁰² Geneva Bible, p. 373
- ¹⁰³ Rashi on Obadiah in The twelve prophets: Hebrew text & English translation. . Abraham Cohen, ed. Soncino Press, 1948
- ¹⁰⁴ Hoeh HL. LOCATION OF THE TRIBES OF ISRAEL Ambassador College, 1957
- ¹⁰⁵ Turner S. The History of the Anglo-Saxons from the Earliest Period to the Norman Conquest, Vol. 1. Cary and Hart, 1841, pp. 81,82
- ¹⁰⁶ Herodotus. The Histories, Book 1, 103-105. A. D. Godley, Ed. G.P. Putnam's Sons, 1920, pp. 133-137
- ¹⁰⁷ Vailhé S. "Scythopolis." The Catholic Encyclopedia. Vol. 13. New York: Robert Appleton Company, 1912.
- ¹⁰⁸ Jacobs J, Price IM. "Scythians." Jewish Encyclopedia. Funk and Wagnalls, 1906
- ¹⁰⁹ Giles, p. 22
- ¹¹⁰ Bede. The Ecclesiastical History of the English People. Oxford University Press, 1969, pp. 10-11
- ¹¹¹ Cowan, pp. 123-124
- ¹¹² Davidiy Y. Commentary on the book of Obadiah. <http://britam.org/obadiah.html> accessed 11/17/22
- ¹¹³ The Declaration of Arbroath: 700th Anniversary Display 1320–2020. National Reocrids of Scotland, 2020
- ¹¹⁴ Shuger D. Irishmen, Aristocrats, and Other White Barbarians. Renaissance Quarterly Vol. 50, No. 2, Summer, 1997, pp. 494-525
- ¹¹⁵ Johnson JW. The Scythian: His Rise and Fall. Journal of the History of Ideas Vol. 20, No. 2, Apr. 1959, p. 256
- ¹¹⁶ Unterla'nder M. et al. Ancestry and demography and descendants of Iron Age nomads of the Eurasian Steppe. Nature Communications, March 3, 2017, p. 2
- ¹¹⁷ Glover FRA. England: The Remnant of Judah and the Israel of Ephraim, 2nd ed., Rivingtons, 1881, pp. 131-132
- ¹¹⁸ Isaac Arbarbanel Commentary on Obadiah 19. Sefaria.org accessed 11/17/22
- ¹¹⁹ Davidiy, pp. 384, 445-447
- ¹²⁰ Knox RT. Josephs Land: Ephraim, Or Great Britain, Manasseh Or United States, 1886. Nickels R. History of the Seventh Day Church of God. Giving & Sharing, 1994, pp. 76,142; McNair R. America and Britain in Prophecy. Global Church of God, 1996, pp. 29-32; Davidiy, pp. 361-450

-
- 121 Strong's Exhaustive Concordance word #1285
- 122 Strong's Exhaustive Concordance word #377
- 123 Spencer, p. 78
- 124 Brackney, p. 61
- 125 Davidy Y. The Tribes. Russell-Davis Publishers, Israel. 1993, p. 403
- 126 Davidiy, p. 426. #Kephart, apparently a reference to-- Calvin Kephart, "Races of Mankind, Their Origin and Migration," N.Y. 1960, pp.437-438
- 127 Harris, JT, et al. United States. Encyclopædia Britannica. Updated December 22, 2019
- 128 McCarthy N. The Biggest Empires In Human History. Statista, December 19, 2019
- 129 Jones P. My Visit To A Black Hebrew Israelite Meeting In Harlem. Religion Unplugged, February 8, 2019
- 130 Marx G. The Beliefs and Practices of the Church of God in Transylvania During the Middle Ages, 1588-1623
- 131 (The Sabbatarians in Transylvania) *Ihre Geschichte, Literatur und Dogmatic* (their story, literature and doctrines) *ein Beitrag zur Religions und Kulturgeschichte der Juengsten Drei Jahrhunderte* (a contribution to the religious and cultural history of the last three centuries) von (by) Dr. Samuel Kohn, printed in Leipzig, Germany in 1894
- 132 Wall JE. JEREMIAH IN IRELAND Proof from the Bible and the Irish Annals in The Lost Tribes of Israel--Selected Writings. Freetoshare Publications, 2011 pp. 36-48; Keating G. The history of Ireland from the earliest period to the English Invasion. P. M. Haverty, 1857, pp. 122,126,136
- 133 Wall, pp. 41-42
- 134 Wall, p. 46; The Stone of Destiny. Gleanings from" the Tracing Board" of The Grand Lodge of Saskatchewan - 1986; McNair R. KEY TO NORTHWEST EUROPEAN ORIGINS. AuthorHouse, 2012, p. 126
- 135 Petrie, p. 154
- 136 McNair, p. 126
- 137 Wild J. The Lost Tribes. J.O. Robinson, 1879, pp. 94, 107-108, 253, 274-276
- 138 Ibid, p. 63
- 139 Ogwyn J. Lesson 49 - Major Prophets Ezekiel 17-32. Bible Study Series Date: May 7, 2002
- 140 McNair, Key to Northwest Origins, pp. 88-89
- 141 O'Donovan J. Annals of the Kingdom of Ireland by the Four Masters. Dublin: Hodges, 1854, p. 31
- 142 Robinson T. The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future. United Church of God, 2003, p. 17
- 143 Spencer, p. 97
- 144 e.g. Klyosov AA, Tomezzol GT. DNA Genealogy and Linguistics. Ancient Europe. Advances in Anthropology, 2013. Vol.3, No.2, 101-111
- 145 McDonald RH. The Hill of Tara. Journal of the British Archaeological Association, Volume 1. 1895, pp. 274-275
- 146 Ibid, p. 274, Petrie pp. 129-136

-
- 147 McDonald, p. 275
- 148 Petrie, pp. 130-136 has Amergin's poem in Gaelic
- 149 Goodchild JA. *The Book of Tephí*. Paul, 1897
- 150 McNair, p. 90
- 151 Publius Cornelius Tacitus. *History of Tacitus, Book V. Bod Third Party Titles*, 2022, p. 265
- 152 Cohen A. Anglo-Israelism. *Universal Jewish Encyclopedia*, Volume 1, 1934, p. 317
- 153 Totten CALT. *The Secret of History or the King's Daughters*. Totten, 1891, pp. 165-207
- 154 Kendall C. *The Breach*. Dorrance Publishing Company, p. 288; Totten, pp. 213-219, 232
- 155 Totten, p. 231
- 156 Sullivan. *The Story of Ireland*. Sullivan, 1885, pp. 20-21
- 157 McNeay M. *The True Origin of the Sons of Mil*. *Journal of the County Louth Archaeological and Historical Society*, Vol. 18, No. 1, 1973, pp. 69-83
- 158 Ibid
- 159 Kendall, p. 288
- 160 Giles JA. *Old English Chronicles Including Ethelwerd's Chronicle, Asser's Life of Alfred, Geoffrey of Monmouth's British History, Gildas, Nennius; Together with the Spurious Chronicle of Richard of Cirencester*. 1908, G. Bell, pp. 113-114
- 161 Sadler, p. 35
- 162 Seven Sages of Greece.
<https://www.hellenicaworld.com/Greece/LX/en/SevenSagesOfGreece.html> accessed 05/18/23
- 163 Totten, p. 208
- 164 Totten, p. 208
- 165 Connellan O. *The Annals of Ireland, Translated from the Original Irish of the Four Masters; with Annotations*. Geraghty, 1846, p. 413; Totten, p. 208
- 166 Totten, pp. 233-234
- 167 McNair, p. 89
- 168 After writing this, I noted that Raymond McNair, also taught this was a reference to Zedekiah. "Ezekiel 21 ... Verse 25 referred to the profane and wicked king, Zedekiah, who was going to be humbled and abased. The diadem or crown was to be taken from his head, and put on the head of one who had been of low rank. There is nothing in the Bible or in history to show that the Davidic crown passed to any one other than to the sovereigns ruling in Ireland!" *Key to Northwest Origins*. p. 87.
- 169 Kissick RG. *The Irish Prince and the Hebrew Prophet*. MASONIC PUBLISHING COMPANY, New York, 1896, pp. 73, 89, 139
- 170 Hoeh H. *COMPENDIUM OF WORLD HISTORY, VOLUME 1*, p. 198.
- 171 Vilnay Z. *Legends of Jerusalem Volume 1*. Jewish Publication Society, 1973, pp. 9-10
- 172 E.g. Plain Truth Staff. *The Bible Answers Short Questions From Our Readers*. Plain Truth Magazine July 1959; *The Christian remembrancer*; or, *The Churchman's Biblical, ecclesiastical & literary miscellany*. 1864, p. 2

-
- 173 Poole WH. Anglo-Israel Or, The Saxon Race, Proved to be the Lost Tribes of Israel. W. Briggs, 1889, p. 501
- 174 Cartwright M. Stone of Scone. World History Encyclopedia, 2018.
- 175 Ibid; Johnson B. The Stone of Destiny. Hiatoric UK, viewed 03/06/23.
- 176 Enfield L. The disputed history of the Coronation Stone. BBC, March 6, 2023
- 177 Yarrow S. The Legend of Teia Tephí, Queen of Ireland.
http://www.pocketoz.com.au/colours/covenant_tephi.html accessed 08/12/22
- 178 Joyce PW. The Wonders of Ireland and Other Papers on Irish Subjects, Longmans, Green, and Company, 1911, p. 70
- 179 Petrie, pp. 161-162
- 180 Petrie, p. 130
- 181 The Christian remembrancer; or, The Churchman's Biblical, ecclesiastical & literary miscellany. 1864, p. 2
- 182 Enfield L. The disputed history of the Coronation Stone. BBC, March 6, 2023
- 183 Ashmole E. The entire ceremonies of the coronations of His Majesty King Charles II. and of her Majesty Queen Mary, Consort to James II: As published by those learned heralds Ashmole and Sandford. With the prayers at full length. To which is prefix'd, an introduction historical and critical; likewise an appendix, containing many curious particulars. MDCCCLXI, pp. 33-35
- 184 Brackney, p. 61
- 185 Adams RN. The King's Pedigree. Otago Witness, September 24, 1902, p. 69
- 186 Stanley B. Christianity in the Twentieth Century, A World History. Princeton University Press, 2018, p. 24
- 187 George, Duke of York. Letter, 1922. Facsimile printed in The Independent, April 6, 1996 as cited in Crawford H, Leo R. Scholarship, Sacrifice and Subjectivity: The Renaissance Bible Today. Taylor & Francis, 2021, p. 113
- 188 Church of England. The Form and Order of the Service that is to be Performed and the Ceremonies that are to be Observed in the Coronation of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II in the Abbey Church of St. Peter Westminster on Tuesday the Second Day of June 1953. Eyre and Spottiswoode, 1953, pp. 12-13
- 189 The Coronation: King's coronation order of service: Follow ceremony including hymns, prayers and readings. Sky News, May 6, 2023
- 190 Ibid.
- 191 Khalil h, Foster M. Holy oil to anoint King Charles III on his coronation, has been consecrated in Jerusalem. CNN, March 4, 2023
- 192 Petrie G. The Transactions of the Royal Irish Academy. Vol. 18, 1839, pp. 25-232
- 193 Petrie, pp. 50-51
- 194 M Fergus Mor Mac Earea. Geneanet, accessed 11/28/22
- 195 Union of the Crowns. Official UK Parliament website accessed
<https://www.parliament.uk/about/living-heritage/evolutionofparliament/legislativescrutiny/act-of-union-1707/overview/union-of-the-crowns/> 08/12/22
- 196 Hoeh H. Location of the Tribes of Israel

-
- 197 Churchill W. "Iron Curtain Speech," March 5, 1946. Westminster College, Fulton, Missouri
- 198 Justin Trudeau: Canadian PM toasts 'sibling' Barack Obama. BBS, March 11, 2016
- 199 Europe needs to start thinking more like the U.S. on security, former German vice chancellor says. CNBC, October 1, 2021
- 200 JCO. China lashes out at AUKUS after deal to develop hypersonic weapons. La Prensa Latina, April 6, 2022
- 201 Robertson AB. Ephraim-England: the sixth century revelation of the fruits of history. James Nisbet, 1886, pp. 17-18
- 202 Hoeh H. What are the Times of the Gentiles? Plain Truth, September 1955
- 203 Davidiy, p. 205
- 204 Davidiy, p. 384
- 205 McNair R. A Strong United Europe. Tomorrow's World, February 1970, p. 17
- 206 THE MINOR PROPHETS SPEAK TO US! Youth Bible Lessons, Level 7, Lesson 9, 1986, p. 2
- 207 "Samaritans" in Encyclopaedia Judaica, 1972, Volume 14, col. 727, as cited in Louvish M. Religious life and communities. Keter Books, 1974, p. 61
- 208 Samaria (Sebaste). <http://www.bibleplaces.com/samaria.htm> viewed 02/19/14
- 209 Killebrew A. Biblical peoples and ethnicity: an archaeological study of Egyptians, Canaanites, Philistines, and early Israel, 1300-1100 B.C.E. Society of Biblical Lit, 2005, p. 159
- 210 Jacobs J, Raison J. Samaritans, Jewish Encyclopedia of 1906, Volume 10, pp. 669-681
- 211 Herodotus, pp. 133-137
- 212 Isaac Arbarbanel Commentary on Obadiah 19. Sefaria.org accessed 11/17/22
- 213 RABIN MISHNAH STUDY GROUP Mishnah study in the religious climate of Masorti (Conservative) Judaism by Rabbi Simchah Roth. BET MIDRASH VIRTUALI of the Rabbinical Assembly in Israel. February 27th 2003 / I Adar 25th 5763 [Sotah 083] <http://www.bmv.org.il/shiurim/sotah/sot083.html> accessed 01/20/17
- 214 Davidiy Y. Commentary on the book of Obadiah. <http://britam.org/obadiah.html> accessed 11/17/22
- 215 Families. Israelite Samaritan Information Institute, <https://www.israelite-samaritans.com/about-israelite-samaritans/families/> accessed 07/25/22
- 216 Govier G, ed. Samaritan Park ... Artifax, Volume 38 (3), Summer 2022, pp. 10-11
- 217 'The Isaiah 9:10 Judgment': U.S. in crosshairs. WND, February 20, 2012
- 218 US Marks 9-11 Anniversary. Voice of America, September 10, 2010
- 219 'The Isaiah 9:10 Judgment': U.S. in crosshairs. WND, February 2012
- 220 E.g. see Freedom of Speech, 2nd edition. Christian Legal Centre, 2018
- 221 Thiel B. 2012 and the Rise of the Secret Sect. Nazarene Books, 2009
- 222 Clinch M. Heat Apocalypse. CNBC, July 19, 2022; Freedman A. Heat waves shattered records on 2 continents before summer began. Axios, June 21, 2022; Beradelli J. Wildfires and weather extremes: It's not coincidence, it's climate change. CBS, September 17, 2020

-
- 223 Rickards J. Axis of Gold. The Daily Reckoning, December 20, 2016
- 224 Ibid
- 225 Gertz B, China Debt Threat. Washington Times, March 2, 2011
- 226 Jayakumar V. The weaponization of finance threatens the future of the dollar standard. The Hill, March 1, 2022
- 227 Hogberg G. Rising World Colossus. Plain Truth magazine, May 1971
- 228 Escobar P. BRICS was created as a tool of attack: Lula. Asia Times, August 28, 2019
- 229 BRICS developing new global reserve currency – Putin. RT, June 22, 2022
- 230 Helms K. Economists Discuss Russia, China Potentially Developing Gold-Backed Currency. BRICS Information Portal, November 11, 2022
- 231 US Responds to Massive BRICS Expansion Effort As Nations Push to Launch Global Currency, Ditch Dollar. Daily Hodl, May 5, 2023
- 232 Hunter M. BRICS Is Becoming The Big Kid On The Block: Implications For Australia – Analysis. Eurasia Review, November 1, 2022
- 233 Snyder M. As Yellowstone Awakens, Dr. Michio Kaku Warns That It Could “Literally Tear The Guts Out Of The United States Of America”. Economic Collapse Blog, February 2019
- 234 Hogberg G. EUROPE: Winds of Change Before the Storm. Plain Truth, December 1981
- 235 Hoeh H. The 2300 Days. Plain Truth, August 1965
- 236 Rehle M. U.S. taps half-billion German phone, internet links in month: report. Reuters, June 30, 2014
- 237 Babb C. China Remains Top Threat in New US National Defense Strategy. Voice of America, October 27, 2022
- 238 Germany Calls Allegations of US Bugging 'Unacceptable' Voice of America, July 1, 2013
- 239 Rehle M. U.S. taps half-billion German phone, internet links in month: report. Reuters, June 30, 2014
- 240 Heilbrunn J. The German-American breakup. Los Angeles Times, July 10, 2014
- 241 Ukraine crisis: Transcript of leaked Nuland-Pyatt call. BBC News, February 7, 2014
- 242 Biden to name Sherman, Nuland to top diplomatic posts: sources. Reuters, January 5, 2021
- 243 Alden C. China and Europe Won't Get Any Relief on Trade From Biden. ForeignPolicy.com, November 6, 2020
- 244 Moens B, et al. Europe accuses US of profiting from war. Politico.eu, November 24, 2022
- 245 e.g. German finance minister warns of US trade war. Deutsche Welle, December 3, 2022
- 246 Europe hates Trump. Does it matter? BBC, March 4, 2016

-
- 247 Wish List or Reality? Digital Trends in 2016 | Karl-Theodor zu Guttenberg | hub conference. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dgdZUA96UBU>. Posted 12/11/ 2015
- 248 Germans consider US as reliable a partner as Russia – poll. RT, February 4, 2017
- 249 Trump worries Nato with 'obsolete' comment. BBC, January 16, 2017
- 250 Trump defence chief Mattis threatens less commitment to Nato. January 15, 2017; Sanger DE, Haberman M. Donald Trump Sets Conditions for Defending NATO Allies Against Attack. New York Times, July 20, 2016
- 251 Stur B. The making of a European Defence Union. New Europe. December 12, 2017
- 252 Trump 2024 is a threat to Europe's security. Public News Time, July 1, 2022
- 253 Bosotti A. EU army plot to fuel 'antagonistic' fury from global enemies and spark conflict threat. December 1, 2020; Flores J. The End of NATO? Macron Laments 'Brain Death' and Pushes for a European Military. Strategic Culture, November 10, 2019
- 254 Germany commits €100 billion to new armed forces fund. Deutsche Welle, February 27, 2022
- 255 Kurbjuweit D. America Has Abdicated Its Leadership of the West. Spiegel Online, November 16, 2016
- 256 Karnitschnig M. Why Europe secretly roots for Donald Trump. Strategic-Culture.org. September 22, 2016
- 257 Air Force Official Disputes GAO Report on Projected GPS Failure. Satellite Today, May 26, 2009
- 258 Thiel B. 2012 and the Rise of the Secret Sect. Nazarene Books, 2009, p. 89
- 259 Butler A. U.S. Satellite Coverage Gaps Loom. Aviation Week, November 10, 2009
- 260 As quoted in: North R. Galileo: The Military and Political Dimensions, Paper no. 47. Bruggesgroup.com accessed 12/29/16
- 261 Amos J. EU awards Galileo satellite-navigation contracts. BBC, Jan 7, 2010
- 262 A Wolfowitz P. Letter to the Honorable Minster of Defense. Office of the US Deputy Secretary of Defense, December 2, 2001
- 263 Wolf J. US, wary of China, mulls satellite substitutes. Reuters, February 4, 2010
- 264 U.S. and the EU to collaborate on usage of Global Navigation Satellite Systems. BNO News, July 31, 2010
- 265 Jewett R. The EU Reaches Agreement on New Satellite Constellation Iris. Via Satellite, November 22, 2022
- 266 Stearns S. Kerry: US to Work Closely With Allies Over Surveillance Concerns. VOA, November 5, 2013
- 267 Gannon M. UK ends Galileo talks, says it will explore a homegrown alternative. SpaceNews, December 4, 2018
- 268 Erwin S. U.S. military doubles down on GPS despite vulnerabilities. SpaceNews, August 9, 2021

-
- 269 Josephus. *Josephus Complete Works. Antiquities of the Jews*, Book I, Chapter VI, Verse 4. Translated by William Whiston in 1867. Kregel Publications, Grand Rapids (MI), 1960, p. 31
- 270 Augustine. *The City of God* (Book XVI). Translated by Marcus Dods. From *Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers, First Series*, Vol. 2. Edited by Philip Schaff. (Buffalo, NY: Christian Literature Publishing Co., 1887.)
- 271 Rines GE. *The Encyclopedia Americana: a library of universal knowledge*, Volume 2. Encyclopedia Americana Corp., 1918 Original from the University of Wisconsin - Madison. Digitized Nov 9, 2007, pp. 428-439
- 272 Porter B. *Proceedings, American Philosophical Society* (vol. 140, No. 2, 1996). (Politics and in Ancient Assyria: 164-174
- 273 Ricon P. Making of Europe unlocked by DNA. BBC, April 23, 2013
- 274 Clare IS. *Ancient oriental nations*, Volume 1 of *The Unrivalled History of the World: Containing a Full and Complete Record of the Human Race from the Earliest Historical Period to the Present Time, Embracing a General Survey of the Progress of Mankind in National and Social Life, Civil Government, Religion, Literature, Science and Art*. Unrivalled Publishing Co., 1889, p. 225
- 275 Assyria. *Smith's Bible Dictionary*. Hendrickson Publishers, pp. 61-62
- 276 Clare, pp. 222-223
- 277 Radmacher Concordance in. *Nelson Study Bible*, p. 11
- 278 Jerome. Letter CXXIII to Ageruchia, Chapter 16. Translated by W.H. Fremantle, G. Lewis and W.G. Martley. From *Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers, Second Series*, Vol. 6. Edited by Philip Schaff and Henry Wace. Buffalo, NY: Christian Literature Publishing Co., 1893
- 279 Hoeh H. *Germany in Prophecy! - Part 1*. Plain Truth, December 1962
- 280 Vestal SC. *The maintenance of peace, or, The foundations of domestic and international peace as deduced from a study of the history of nations*. G.P. Putnam's Sons, 1920, p. 118
- 281 Oswalt JN, Oswalt J. *The Book of Isaiah, Chapters 1-39 New International Commentary on the Old Testament*. Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing, 1986, p. 226
- 282 Spiteri G. *Return of the Living Jesus Christ*. Xulon Press, 2007, p. xxvii
- 283 Pliny the Elder. *Natural History*, Book 4, Chapter 85
- 284 White, p. 100
- 285 Fodor E. *Germany 1962*. D. McKay, 1962, p. 175; see also Treverorum A. *British Quarterly Review*, July 1875, pp. 1-3
- 286 Hoeh H. *Germany in Prophecy, Part 1*. Plain Truth, December 1962
- 287 Birch DA. *Trial, Tribulation & Triumph: Before During and After Antichrist*. Queenship Publishing Company, Goleta (CA), 1996, p. 555
- 288 McNair, *Key to Northwest Origins*
- 289 White C. *In Search of ... The Origin of Nations*. History Research Projects, p. 283
- 290 Karnitschnig M, Kosc W. *Meet Europe's coming military superpower: Poland*. Politico, November 21, 2022
- 291 2022 Serbia Military Strength. *GlobalFirePower.com*, update of May 02, 2022

-
- 292 Basello G, et al., eds. *The Elamite World*. Taylor & Francis, 2018). The tribes of Elam were the Anzan, Uxii or Uxians, Armardians, Mardians, Khapirt, Aipir, Messadatae, Cissi, Cossaei or Coss, and Khuzi or Huzha tribe (White, *Origin of Nations*, p. 283
- 293 Hinz W. *The Lost World of the Elamites*. Sidgwick & Jackson. 1972, p. 21
- 294 White C. *In Search of ... The Origin of Nations*, p. 287
- 295 Herodotos I-3. Edited by A.H. Sayce. *The Ancient Empires of the East*. MacMillan & Co., 1883, p. 62
- 296 Ibid, p. 62
- 297 From Petrović AM. *Arheografija naroda jugoistočne Evrope*, Beograd, 2006, page 19., as Cited in Origin hypotheses of the Serbs. BibleWikipedia, accessed 4/08/22
- 298 White, *In Search of ... The Origin of Nations*, p. 273
- 299 White C. *Who are the Latvians & Lithuanians?* Version 2.0, 2022
- 300 List of Spanish monarchs. *Encyclopedia Britannica* online accessed 08/04/22
- 301 Stump K. *The Arab World in Prophecy*. Plain Truth, December 1979, pp. 8-9
- 302 Hennessey K. Obama outlines strategy to 'ultimately destroy' Islamic State. *Los Angeles Times*, September 5, 2014
- 303 Krasik T. Plans for an 'Arab NATO' gathering momentum. *Arab News*, November 14, 2018; Jordan's king says Ukraine war exposes need for 'Middle East NATO'. *The Times of Israel*, June 25, 2022
- 304 Stump K. *The Arab World in Prophecy*, p. 13
- 305 Stump K. *South Asia in Prophecy*. Plain Truth, July/August 1986, p. 5
- 306 Iran Parliament to debate bill calling for Israel's destruction by 2040. *i24news*, January 6, 2021
- 307 Egozi A. With Netanyahu back in charge, is a solo Israeli strike against Iran in the cards? *Breaking Defense*, November 08, 2022
- 308 Glasse C. *New Encyclopedia of Islam: A Revised Edition of the Concise Encyclopedia of Islam*, 3rd edition, 2008, pp. 143, 316
- 309 North Thunder 'achieved more than desired results.' *Arab News*, March 5, 2017
- 310 Reagen DR. *Further Thoughts About a Muslim Antichrist*. Bible Prophecy Today, March 16, 2009.
- 311 Understanding the Muslim Brotherhood, IKWANWEB, The official website of the Muslim Brotherhood, February 14, 2011
- 312 Nayouf, Hayyan. Translated from Arabic by Sonia Farid. Shiite scholar denies Obama link to Muslim savior. Dubai. November 4, 2008.
<http://www.alarabiya.net/articles/2008/11/04/59490.html> viewed 05/19/09
- 313 The Qur'an. From chapter 43 <http://www.usc.edu/schools/college/crcc/engagement/resources/texts/muslim/quran/043.qmt.html> 03/22/09
- 314 Richardson J. *Antichrist: Islam's Awaited Messiah*. Pleasant Word, 2006, p. 48

-
- 315 Ibn Zubair Ali, Mohammed Ali. The minor signs of Last Days from: The Signs of Qiyamah. <http://www.islamawareness.net/Prophecies/minor.html> viewed 08/11/12
- 316 Hippolytus. On Christ and Antichrist, Chapter 43
- 317 Irenaeus. Against Heresies, Book V, Chapter 25, verse 4
- 318 White. In Search of ... , p. 194
- 319 Ellicott CJ. Ellicott's Commentary for English Readers. CASSELL AND COMPANY, LIMITED, 1905
- 320 White. In Search of ... , pp. 165, 194-197
- 321 White. In Search of ... , p. 196
- 322 Personal Correspondence Department. Letter L270, L270-688. Ambassador College, Pasadena
- 323 Josephus, Antiquities: 1:6:2
- 324 White, In Search of, p. 89
- 325 White, In Search of, p. 431
- 326 "Visions of the Great Nyasaye, A Study of the Luo Religion in Kenya", Order of Sorcha Faal, Sister Mary McCrea © 1915; © February 13, 2008.
- 327 Okumu E. Kenya: Obama Thrills Crowd With Sauti Sol's Lipala Dance at State Dinner. The Star. July 26, 2015
- 328 McConway G. Tulsi Gabbard Says Obama Pulling Biden's Strings. Conservative Journal Review, May 3, 2022; Goddard T. The Biden Do-Over. Political Wire, March 28, 2021
- 329 Painter, John Thomas. Ethnology: or The history & genealogy of the human race: Or, The History & Genealogy of the Human Race. Baillière, Tindall & Cox, 1880, p. 106
- 330 Stump K. South Asia in Prophecy. Plain Truth, May 1980, p. 9
- 331 Kang C.H., Nelson E.R. The Discovery of Genesis: How the Truths of Genesis Were Found Hidden in the Chinese Language. Concordia Publishing House, St. Louis, 1979, p. 5
- 332 Kaplan S. Legends say China began in a great flood. Scientists just found evidence that the flood was real. Washington Post, August 4, 2016
- 333 McNair, Key to Northwest Origins
- 334 Griffis W E. Corea, the hermit nation: I. Ancient and mediaeval history. II. Political and social Corea. III. Modern and recent history 8th Edition. C. Scribner's sons, 1907, pp. 19,21; Hu, Charles Y. Korea. World Book Encyclopedia, 50th edition, Volume 11. Chicago, p. 296
- 335 White, In Search of...The Origin of Nations. History Research Projects. 164-165
- 336 Plache RF, Lexander GL. Japan's New Role in Asia. Plain Truth, April 1968, p. 27
- 337 Generations of Japheth. Church of God News. Chicago District, 1965
- 338 Hoeh H. Good News magazine, March 1958
- 339 Hopi Civilization. http://2012wiki.com/index.php?title=Hopi_Civilization viewed 01/14/08

-
- 340 "Visions of the Great Nyasaye, A Study of the Luo Religion in Kenya", Order of Sorch Faal, Sister Mary McCrea © 1915; © February 13, 2008.
- 341 E.g. Irenaeus. *Adversus haereses*, Book V, Chapter 28:2-3
- 342 See also <https://www.cogwriter.com/gap-theory-old-earth-long-days-creation.htm>
- 343 Babylonian Talmud: Tractate Sanhedrin Folio 97a
- 344 Pirke De Rabbi Eliezer, Gerald Friedlander, Sepher-Hermon Press, New York, 1981, p. 141
- 345 Seligsohn M. Seder Olam. Jewish Encyclopedia of 1906; Berkowitz AE. Scientist Claims Redemption May Be Much Closer Than You Thought. *Breaking Israel News*, June 28, 2018; First M. Jewish History in Conflict: A Study of the Major Discrepancy between Rabbinic and Conventional Chronology, 1997;
- 346 Eusebius. *The History of the Church*, Book III, Chapter XXIX, Verse 12, p. 69
- 347 Irenaeus. *Adversus haereses*, Book V, Chapter 28:2-3
- 348 Irenaeus. *Adversus haereses*, Book V, Chapter 30:4
- 349 St. Hippolytus of Rome, *The Catholic Encyclopedia*, 1910
- 350 Hippolytus. On the Hexaëmeron, Or Six Days' Work. From Fragments from Commentaries on Various Books of Scripture
- 351 Hippolytus. On Christ and Antichrist, Chapter 43.
- 352 Rupert GG. *Time, Tradition, and Truth Concerning the End of the World*, 3rd edition. Union Publishing Company, 1918, pp. 26-30
- 353 Hoeh H. *The Feast of Tabernacles - Its MEANING for New Testament Christians*. Good News, August 1980
- 354 Culligan E. *The Last World War and the End of Time*. The book was blessed by Pope Paul VI, 1966. TAN Books, Rockford (IL), pp. 113-115
- 355 Rossi, Gaudentius. *The Christian Trumpet: Or, Previsions and Predictions about Impending General Calamities, the Universal Triumph of the Church, the Coming of the Anti-Christ, the Last Judgment, and the End of the World; Divided Into Three Parts*, 4th edition. Patrick Donahoe, 1875, pp. 233-238
- 356 Cupper28. *Kaliyuga Ends by 2025*, Mystry. *Daily English News*, July 4, 2018
- 357 Dupont Y. *Catholic Prophecy: The Coming Chastisement*. TAN Books, Rockford (IL), 1973, p. 93
- 358 Dupont, p.94
- 359 Dupont, p. 94
- 360 Chopra, R. editor in chief. *Nostradamus Prophecies with Famous Examples*. <http://www.liveindia.com/nostradamus/famous.html> viewed 11/29/08
- 361 Nostradamus. *Les Propheties*. 1840 Barest edition.

-
- 362 Stockbauer B. Native American prophecies, UFO's and the coming of a messiah.
<http://mindlight.info/maitreya/bsprophe.htm> viewed 06/05/14
- 363 Crystal E. Hopi Prophecies. <http://www.crystalinks.com/hopi2.html> viewed 06/05/14
- 364 Huchedé, P. Translated by JBD. History of Antichrist. Imprimatur: Edward Charles Fabre, Bishop of Montreal. English edition 1884, Reprint 1976. TAN Books, Rockford (IL), p. 24
- 365 Culleton R. Gerald. The Prophets and Our Times. Nihil Obstat: L. Arvin. Imprimatur: Philip G. Scher, Bishop of Monterey-Fresno, November 15, 1941 Reprint 1974, TAN Books, Rockford (IL), pp. 177-178
- 366 Birch, DA. Trial, Tribulation & Triumph: Before During and After Antichrist. Queenship Publishing Company, Goleta (CA), 1996, pp. 225,226
- 367 Birch, pp. 553, 555
- 368 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, pp. 171,172
- 369 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 195
- 370 Pope's Address at Being Awarded Charlemagne Prize. Zenit, May 6, 2016
- 371 Tzima Otto H. The Great Monarch and WWII in Orthodox, Roman Catholic, and Scriptural Prophecies. Verenika Press, Rock City (SC), 2000, p.40
- 372 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, pp. 171,172
- 373 Dupont, p.114, Birch, p. 276
- 374 Connor, pp. 31- 32
- 375 Tzima Otto, The Great Monarch and WWII in Orthodox, Roman Catholic, and Scriptural Prophecies, pp. 82-84
- 376 Connor, pp. 31-32
- 377 Wilders G. Political Revolution Is Brewing in Europe. Gatestone Institute, December 21, 2016
- 378 Ahnert T, et a. The economics of central bank digital currency. Working paper No. 2713, European Central Bank, August 2022, p. 31
- 379 Background. European Public Prosecutor's Office.
<https://www.eppo.europa.eu/en/background> accessed 08/11/22
- 380 Berry ES. The Apocalypse of St. John, 1920. Quoted in Culleton RG. The Reign of Antichrist. Reprint 1974, TAN Books, Rockford (IL), pp. 199-200
- 381 Penn L. False Dawn. Sophia Perennis, 2005, p. 420
- 382 Thigpen P. The Rapture Trap, 2nd edition. Nihil obstat Joseph C. Price, June 14, 2002. Imprimatur Anthony Cardinal Bevilacqua, Archbishop of Philadelphia, June 18, 2002. Ascension Press, 2002, pp. 222-225
- 383 Tzima Otto, pp. 30, 32

-
- 384 Pavlac BA, Lott ES. The Holy Roman Empire: A Historical Encyclopedia. ABC-CLIO, 2019
- 385 Jerome. Commentary on Daniel, Chapter 11. Translated by Gleason L. Archer. (1958).
- 386 Pay Attention to Daniel's Prophecy! Watchtower Bible and Tract Society of New York, Brooklyn, 1999; 2006 printing, p. 218
- 387 Pay Attention to Daniel's Prophecy!, p. 247
- 388 Revelation, Chapter 3. United States Conference of Catholic Bishops.
www.usccb.org/bible/revelation/3 viewed 08/25/2012
- 389 Jerome. Commentary on Daniel, Chapter 11.
- 390 1 Nephi 13:4-5
- 391 Fausset, A. R., A.M. "Commentary on Daniel 11". "Commentary Critical and Explanatory on the Whole Bible".
<http://bible.crosswalk.com/Commentaries/JamiesonFaussetBrown/jfb.cgi?book=da&chapter=011>>. 1871. viewed 7/23/08
- 392 Holy Bible: Vine's Expository Reference Edition., p. 788
- 393 Jerome. Commentary on Daniel, Chapter 11.
- 394 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 226
- 395 Huchedé P. History of Antichrist. Imprimatur Edward Charles Fabre, Bishop of Montreal, First English edition 1884. 1976 TAN Books, Rockford (IL), p. 22
- 396 Jerome. Commentary on Daniel, Chapter 11
- 397 Birch, pp. 317,326; Dupont, pp.60,62,71
- 398 Jerome. Commentary on Daniel, Chapter 11
- 399 Berkowitz AE. Miracle of Ingathering at Dedication of Altar for Third Temple. Breaking Israel News, December 10, 2018
- 400 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 151
- 401 U.S. and the EU to collaborate on the usage of Global Navigation Satellite Systems. Wire Update, BNO News, July 31, 2010
- 402 Dupont, p.18
- 403 Tzima Otto, H. The Great Monarch and WWII in Orthodox, Roman Catholic and Scriptural Prophecies. Verenikia Press, Rock Hill (SC), 2000,, p. 316
- 404 Connor, pp. 31- 32
- 405 Gigot FE. 'The Abomination of Desolation.' The Catholic Encyclopedia, Volume I. Nihil Obstat, March 1, 1907. Remy Lafort, S.T.D., Censor. Imprimatur. +John Cardinal Farley, Archbishop of New York 1907
- 406 The Original And True Douay Old Testament Of Anno Domini 1610, Prepared and Edited by Dr. William von Peters, Ph.D. Copyright © 2005, p. 741
- 407 Clarke A. The Adam Clarke Commentary on Daniel Chapter 11.

-
- 408 By Anne Emmerich, in Thiel B. 2012 and the Rise of the Secret Sect. Nazarene Books, 2009, p. 106
- 409 By Andrew Fool for Christ, in Tzima Otto, p. 113
- 410 In this Sign you will conquer with One Voice. Cyndi Cain's SYMPHONY OF SUFFERING column DailyCatholic.org September 3-5, 2001 volume 12, no. 148
- 411 Tzima Otto, p. 240
- 412 OT:6256 `eth. Biblesoft's New Exhaustive Strong's Numbers and Concordance with Expanded Greek-Hebrew Dictionary. Copyright (c) 1994, Biblesoft and International Bible Translators, Inc.
- 413 The Wycliffe Bible Commentary, Daniel 12:1
- 414 Dupont, p.38
- 415 Dupont, p.31
- 416 Kramer H.B. L. The Book of Destiny. Nihil Obstat: J.S. Considine, O.P., Censor Deputatus. Imprimatur: +Joseph M. Mueller, Bishop of Sioux City, Iowa, January 26, 1956. Reprint TAN Books, Rockford (IL), pp. 296-297
- 417 Graff, Ron and Dolphin, Lambert. Thy Kingdom Come, Thy Will Be Done..., Chapter 11. Peninsula Bible Church, Palo Alto (CA), 1998
- 418 LaHaye T, Hindson E. The Popular Bible Prophecy Commentary. Harvest House, Eugene (OR), 2006, pp. 523-524
- 419 Hildegard of Bingen. Scivias. Paulist Press, Mahwah (NJ), pp. 301-302
- 420 Rheims New Testament, p. 556
- 421 Irenaeus. Adversus haereses, Book V, Chapter 34, Verse 3. From Ante-Nicene Fathers, Volume 1. Edited by Alexander Roberts & James Donaldson. 1885
- 422 Hippolytus. On Christ and Antichrist, Chapter 61
- 423 Cyril of Jerusalem. Catechetical Lecture 15
- 424 Victorinus of Petau. Commentary on the Apocalypse. Ante-Nicene Christian library:...the Fathers down to A.D. 325. T. and T. Clark, 1870, p. 423
- 425 Revelation, Chapter 3. United States Conference of Catholic Bishops. www.usccb.org/bible/revelation/3 viewed 08/25/2012
- 426 Tzima Otto, pp.190, 274
- 427 José Hoíl J, Roys R. The Book of Chilam Balam of Chumayel. Roys Publisher, 1933. Reprint Forgotten Books, 1967, p. 80
- 428 José Hoíl, p. 233
- 429 Ogwyn J. The United States and Great Britain in Prophecy. LCG, p. 42
- 430 Interlinear Transliterated Bible. Dan 11:36, 6213. Copyright (c) 1994 by Biblesoft
- 431 The Christian remembrancer, p. 39

-
- 432 Gesenius HFW, Driver SR, Briggs CA, Brown F, Robinson E. A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament.
- 433 Culligan, pp. 118-119
- 434 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, pp. 131,132
- 435 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 163
- 436 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 137
- 437 Dupont, p.15
- 438 Connor, p.30
- 439 Culleton RG. The Reign of Antichrist, p. 163
- 440 Birch, pp. 308-309
- 441 Kramer P. What are the missing contents of the third secret? Fatima Crusader, 95. Summer 20120, pp, 45-46
- 442 Connor, p. 33
- 443 Tzima Otto, p, 116
- 444 Flynn, p. A259
- 445 Lindsey H. The Hal Lindsey Report. Trinity Broadcasting Company, original air date May 1, 2009
- 446 Osborn A. As if Things Weren't Bad Enough, Russian Professor Predicts End of U.S. Wall Street Journal, Dec 29, 2008
- 447 Culleton, The Reign of Antichrist, p. 163
- 448 Silsco A. 'Alaska Is Ours!' Billboards Appear in Russia After Threat to Reclaim State. Newsweek, July 7, 2022
- 449 Davidson JD. How America's Reasons For Entering World War I Resonate Today. The Federalist, April 6, 2017
- 450 Bittner TL. Mormon FAQ: Why Do Mormons Store Food? LDS Blogs, March 14, 2011
- 451 Pui-Hua R. Ancient Chinese Prophecies Till the End of the World. AuthorHouse, Bloomington (IN), 2008, p. 164
- 452 Obama addresses troops at final stop in Australia. New York Times, November 17, 2011; Wen P. Chinese Official: it's us or America. National Times, May 16, 2012
- 453 Ellicott CJ. Ellicott's Commentary for English Readers. CASSELL AND COMPANY, LIMITED, 1905
- 454 Davidiy Y. Ephraim. The Gentile Children of Israel. Lulu.com, 2015, p. 103
- 455 Rossi, pp. 16, 255
- 456 'The Most Sinful Nation on Earth,' February 2010, p. 30
- 457 New Zealand women most promiscuous Sydney Morning Herald AAP - Oct 13, 2007
- 458 LaBarbera P. Look who leads the world in children 'changing their sex'. World Net Daily, January 16, 2023

-
- 459 Gendon M. God's Prophetic Word Encourages Believers . PTG Newsletter, January 1, 2021
- 460 The Sibylline Oracles, Book III, verses 188, 308-319, pp. 78,83
- 461 Gardiner N. Barack Obama will back a federal Europe. Telegraph, March 18, 2009.
- Clinton, Hillary. America's Pacific Century. Foreign Policy, November 2011
- 462 Dupont, p. 32
- 463 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 172
- 464 Matson J. Nuclear Decelerator: Last U.S. Particle Collider is on Chopping Block. Scientific American, August 24, 2012
- 465 Wolchover N. In LHC's Shadow, America's Collider Awakens. Quanta magazine, March 6, 2015
- 466 JCW. Go-ahead for €1.6 billion particle accelerator. The Local, June 13, 2012
- 467 FAIR - An International Facility for Antiproton and Ion Research. <http://www.fair-center.eu/> accessed 12/02/16
- 468 PESCO Projects. European External Action Service, November 15, 2021
- 469 Horizon 2020: The EU Framework Programme for Research and Innovation. European Commission. <http://ec.europa.eu/programmes/horizon2020/en/>
- 470 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 165
- 471 Birch DA. Trial, Tribulation & Triumph: Before During and After Antichrist. Queenship Publishing Company, Goleta (CA), 1996, pp.267-270
- 472 Dupont, p. 75
- 473 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 170
- 474 Tzima Otto H. They'll have no King but Caesar, p. 103
- 475 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 155
- 476 Birch, p. 276
- 477 Tzima-Otto, pp. 30, 31, 32, 50-51, 52
- 478 Seymour W.W. The cross in tradition, history, and art. G.P. Putnam's sons, 1898. Original from Princeton University. Digitized Sep 19, 2008, pp. 910
- 479 Kenny P. Salvadoran cross that is Christian sign of unity is dedicated at Ecumenical Center in Geneva. Ecumenical News, January 18, 2018
- 480 Vatican releases program for Apostolic Journey to Morocco. Vatican News, January 7, 2019
- 481 Yanklowitz S. Global unity or chaos: Special report from the World Economic Forum! Jewish Journal, September 6, 2011
- 482 Secretary-General briefs Security Council on the situation in the Middle East, including the Palestinian question. United Nations, January 26, 2016
- 483 Richardson I, et al. Bilderberg People. Taylor & Francis, 2013

484 Global Agenda: Role of Faith in Systemic Global Challenges World Economic Forum, June 2016; Campbell M. WEF speaker suggests 'New Bible' written by AI. The Counter Signal, June 13, 2023

485 Balázs P. ed. Europe's Position in the New World Order. Center for EU Enlargement Studies, 2013

486 Klaus Schwab at World Economic Forum: 'The future is built by us.' World Tribune, May 23, 2022

487 Donnet P. The world needs a leader. Europe should step up. WEF, January 17, 2018

488 To Professor Klaus Schwab, Executive Chairman of the World Economic Forum. From the Vatican, 12th January 2018; Franciscus PP. Message of His Holiness Pope Francis to Prof. Klaus Schwab. From the Vatican, 17 January 2014

489 Alessi C. 'A golden opportunity' - HRH the Prince of Wales and other leaders on the Forum's Great Reset. WEF, June 3, 2020

490 Stott M. German minister fears "infectious momentum" in Mideast. Reuters, January 28, 2011

491 Karl-Theodor Freiherr zu Guttenberg. World Economic Forum <https://www.weforum.org/people/karl-theodor-zu-guttenberg> accessed 01/21/23

492 Centrifugal Force An Interview with Karl-Theodor zu Guttenberg. Octavian Report, c. 2017; Octavian Report video on November 15, 2017 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nTL_CgBwmxo

493 Scwab K, Malleret T. COVID-19: The Great Reset. Agentur Schweiz, 2020

494 Hohmann L. World Economic Forum (WEF) Announces Creation of Orwellian 'Global Coalition for Digital Safety' Global Research, 1 July 2021

495 Florio G. World Economic Forum Chairman Klaus Schwab Announces His Plans For A "Deep Systemic And Structural Restructuring Of Our World" At The G20 Summit. Evie magazine, November 15, 2022

496 Parker T. Klaus Schwab: Those who master new technologies "in some way, will be the master of the world." Reclaim the Net, February 14, 2023

497 Coglianesi V. Editor Daily Rundown: Klaus Schwab Opens 2023 World Economic Forum With Call To 'Master The Future' Daily Caller, January 17, 2023

498 Dutton J. 'New World Order' Remarks at Davos Spark Flood of Conspiracy Theories. Newsweek, January 20, 2023

499 Dutton J. 'New World Order' Remarks at Davos Spark Flood of Conspiracy Theories. Newsweek, January 20, 2023

500 NEW AGE SPIRITUALITY a.k.a. Self-spirituality, New spirituality, Mind-body-spirit. Religious Tolerance.org <http://www.religioustolerance.org/newage.htm> viewed 07/29/22

501 Reading Lodge No. 254 Free and Accepted Masons of the State of California. <https://reddinglodge.org/mission-and-vision-of-freemasonry/> accessed 08/01/22

502 Why do the Freemasons Love Pope Francis? OnePeter5, April 7, 2017

503 Pui-Hua, p. 85

504 Cumming J. Sabbath evening readings on the New Testament. 1861. Original from Oxford University Digitized Aug 15, 2006, 3594

-
- 505 Pui-Hua, p. 89
- 506 Tzima Otto, p. 111
- 507 Kumar V. Mayan Prediction. <https://vinaykumar2012.blogspot.com/> accessed 07/28/22
- 508 Hindu Prophecies: The Kalki Purana. viewed 12/29/20 <http://www-iii.tripod.com/hindu.htm>
- 509 Cupper28. Kaliyuga Ends by 2025, Mystry. Daily English News, July 4, 2018
- 510 Hindus Celebrate Trump's Birthday ... Daily Stormer, June 14, 2016
- 511 Dupont, p.37
- 512 Ahlström, Gösta W. Prophecy in other religions » Prophetic movements and figures in the Eastern religions. Encyclopedia Britannica Online.
<http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/479082/prophecy/34075/Prophecy-in-other-religions> viewed 03/18/09
- 513 Cf. Rinpoche T. The Coming of Maitreya Buddha
<https://studybuddhism.com/en/advanced-studies/abhidharma-tenet-systems/time-the-universe/the-coming-of-maitreya-buddha> accessed 08/01/22 Buddhism allows for some to be like the Maitreya Buddha at this time and, thus, could put the coming Beast in that category
- 514 Glasse C. New Encyclopedia of Islam: A Revised Edition of the Concise Encyclopedia of Islam, 3rd edition, 2008, pp. 143, 316
- 515 'Islamic coalition against terrorism': Saudi Arabia presents 34-state military block. RRT, December 14, 2015
- 516 Connor, p. 36
- 517 Araujo, Fabio R. Selected Prophecies and Prophets. BookSurge LLC, Charlestown (SC), 2007, p. 103
- 518 Tzima Otto, p. 32
- 519 Culleton, The Prophets and Our Times, p. 157-161
- 520 Tzima Otto, p. 178
- 521 Jerome. Commentary on Daniel, Chapter 11
- 522 Dupont, p. 107
- 523 Tzima Otto, pp. 76, 102, 114
- 524 A Gold Mine Worth LE 23 Billion (and counting). Egypt Today, August, 2006
- 525 Hosny H. Egypt to invest in gold, mineral mining. Al-Monitor, June 13, 2022
- 526 Gold hits new record, posts best month since 2016 CNBC, July 30, 2020; Woodall T. Gold surges to new highs as US dollar weakens despite growing macro risks. S&P Global, August 10, 2020
- 527 MacLeod A. Designing a new currency is impractical. Goldmoney Insights, March 24, 2022
- 528 Rickards J. Axis of Gold. The Dailyreckoning, December 20, 2016

-
- ⁵²⁹ Guistra F. Why the U.S. dollar will be replaced as the dominant global currency – sooner than you think. *Toronto Star*, July 5, 2022
- ⁵³⁰ Maromo J. SA-China-Russia military exercise ... *IOL*, January 22, 2023; Pasricha A. India and China to Take Part in Joint Military Drills with Russia. *Voice of America News*, August 31, 2022
- ⁵³¹ Shoigu lauds Brazil as ‘important strategic partner’ for Russia in Latin America. *Tass*, February 16, 2022
- ⁵³² Lesson 36 – Feast of Trumpets – Why Christ Must Come Again! 58 Lesson Ambassador College Correspondence Course, 1969 revision
- ⁵³³ Just What Do You Mean... ARMAGEDDON? WCG, 1982
- ⁵³⁴ Stump K. Just What Do You Mean - ARMAGEDDON? *Plaint Truth*, June 1985
- ⁵³⁵ e.g. Gregory I. *Registrum Epistolarum*, Book XIII, Letter 1); Culleton RG. *The Reign of Antichrist.*, pp. 127-128; *Catechism of the Catholic Church*. Imprimatur Potest +Joseph Cardinal Ratzinger. Doubleday, NY 1995, p. 194
- ⁵³⁶ Connor, pp. 84,86

For Those Who Wish to Know More

Free Newsletter

You can get a free and essentially daily email newsletter of news events with prophetic-connections from Dr. Thiel by signing up for it at: <http://www.cogwriter.com/news/>

Bible News Prophecy Program Videos

Dr. Thiel has online videos on several platforms:

<http://www.youtube.com/BibleNewsProphecy>
<https://vimeo.com/channels/biblenewsprophecy>
<https://www.brighteon.com/channel/ccogbnp>
<https://www.bitchute.com/channel/prophesy/>
https://www.dailymotion.com/dm_e24c8ac0050c5e7445cd5573711869c6/videos

Radio & Mobile App

Dr. Thiel is on **Bible News Prophecy** radio
<http://www.biblenewsprophecy.net/>
<http://www.biblenewsprophecy.net/mobile-radio>

Multimedia

There is information about our radio stations, literature, international websites, free Bible lessons, and more at:
<https://www.ccog.org/multimedia/>

(Back Cover)
Jews and Scythians

What did ancient Jews look like? Here is a Mosaic from a Jewish village in the late Roman Empire depicting ancient Israelites:



Depiction of Numbers 13:23

History indicates the ‘lost tribes of Israel’ went, for a time, to Scythia. Here is a depiction of a Scythian on ancient pottery:



Scythian archer c. 500 B.C.

The Scythians were Caucasian. Where might they be today?